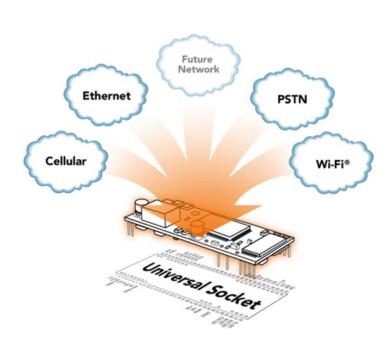
## Universal Socket Connectivity

Embedded Device Networking Solutions



Hardware Guide for Developers



Comment [DAR1]: Resaved as cover page graphic.jpg 65KB 09/17/09 – filed under graphics new in K (poreviously COVER\_UniversalSocket-techclouds.jpg 9/02/09 555KB in Universal\_SocketModem/Graphics\_R

#### **Universal Socket Connectivity**

Hardware Guide for Developers, PN S000342K, Version K

For the following products (The list indicates base models for each product. See each product chapter product build options):

#### **Embedded Wireless Modems**

SocketModem® Cell - MTSMC-G2

SocketModem® Cell - MTSMC-G2-GP (Global Positioning)

SocketModem® iCell – MTSMC-G2-IP SocketModem® CDMA – MTSMC-C1 SocketModem® EDGE – MTSMC-E1 Socket Modem® HSDPA – MTSMC-H

#### **Embedded Analog Modems**

SocketModem® - MT9234SMI SocketModem® - MT5692SMI SocketModem® - MT2492SMI SocketModem® - MT2456SMI-22

#### **Embedded Device Servers**

SocketModem IP® – MT100SEM-IP SocketWireless® Wi-Fi® – MT810SWM-IP SocketWireless® Bluetooth® – MTS2BTSMI

#### Copyright

This publication may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, without prior expressed written permission from Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2004-9 by Multi-Tech Systems, Inc.

Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. makes no representations or warranties with respect to the contents hereof and specifically disclaim any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Furthermore, Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes from time to time in the content hereof without obligation of Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. to notify any person or organization of such revisions or changes. See the Multi-Tech Web site for current revisions of documentation.

#### **Trademarks**

Trademarks and Registered Trademarks of Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. are **SocketModem**, **SocketWireless**, **SocketEthernet IP**, and the Multi-Tech logo.

**Microsoft** and **Windows** are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries. **Bluetooth** is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. **Wi-Fi** is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

**By Phone** 

#### **Warranty and Repairs Statement**

Please see the Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. Web site for the current Warranty and Repairs Statement. http://www.multitech.com/COMPANY/Policies/warranty/

#### **World Headquarters**

Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. 2205 Woodale Drive Mounds View, Minnesota 55112

Phone: 763-785-3500 or 800-328-9717

Fax: 763-785-9874

Internet Address: http://www.multitech.com

#### **Technical Support**

Country

Furone Middle Fast Africa:

Europe, Middle East, Africa: support@multitech.co.uk +(44) 118 959 7774

By Email

U.S., Canada, all others: support@multitech.com 800-972-2439 or 763-717-5863

#### Revision Notes Rev. Date J.1 07/01/09

#### Description

- Reorganized the manual so that wireless products are grouped in Part 2, Analog SocketModems are grouped in Part 3, and Device Servers are grouped in Part 4
- Added new products: MTSMC-G2 and MT100SEM-IP
- Removed MT2456SMI-22 and MTSMC-G-F4 chapters
- Removed the text for the Warranty and Repairs Statement and linked to the Multi-Tech Web site for the policy
- Updated the Universal Developer Kit Contents
- To Pin 24 Description: added Reset stats for MTSMC-G2, MTSMC-C, and MTSMC-E
- · Updated Mechanical Drawings for Analog Modems in Chapter 1
- · Added MTSMC-G2 to the Maximum Component Height
- Fixed the 5V/3.3V Jumper on the Developer Board
- · Added the UFL-to-SMA Coax Cable information to Chapter 1
- Added a new RF Safety section in Chapter 1
- Added the MTSMC-G2 to the Upgrading Firmware Table
- Changed/updated label example for CDMA and Analog SocketModems
- Updated the EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance Statement
- Updated the EMC Requirements for the United States regulatory section
- Added Thailand Approval Statement for the MT9234SMI
- · Added the Brazil Approval section
- Added the English version of Chinese Standards section
- For each listing of power consumption, added the following statement (required by QA): Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.
- Changed the HSDPA max operating temperature to +60°C
- · Added sleep mode power stats for MT9234SIM
- Updated the Ethernet Interface drawings (Non-Isolated & Isolated Designs) for the MT100SEM-IP
- Added an Auto Discovery Manager section to the MT100SEM-IP chapter
- · Updated/corrected the Tip and Ring drawings.

#### J.2 07/30/09

- Updated Mechanical Drawings for SocketModem Cell (MTSMC-G2) and SocketModem iCell (MTSMC-G2-IP).
- Changed the title of two Mechanical Drawings in Chapter 1.

#### J.3 08/28/09

- Updated Mechanical Drawings for SocketModem GPRS (MTSMC-G2).
- Added new Mechanical Drawings for SocketModem CDMA( MTSMC-C).
- Added new Mechanical Drawings for SocketModem HSDPA MTSMC-H

#### J.4 10/15/09

- Added GPS section to G2 chapter (added the power draw table for G2 for GPS).
- Brought back the chapter covering the SocketModem MT2456SMI-22.

#### K 11/18/09

- New chapters for new products: SocketModem MT5692SMI, Device Server MT810SWM-IP, and SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E1).
- Deleted chapters SocketModem MT5656SMI and MT5656SMI-IP.
- Added Sleep Mode Power Draw statistics for the SocketModem MT9234SMI.
- Added new Mechanical Drawings for SocketModem HSDPA (MTSMC-H) and SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C).
- Updated the Power Requirements for the MT2492SMI and MT5692SMI (10/16/09).
- Added Global Positioning section for the SocketModem Cell / SocketModem iCell (MTSMC-G2) and GPS power draw.
- Reorganized Chapter 1 general information, wireless information, and analog information.
- · Added Japan's Standards statement.
- Updated Mechanical Drawings in Chapter 1.
- New Developer Board Block Diagram with antenna system added.

#### L 11/18/09

• Add new product CDMA (MTSMC-C1).

### Table of Contents

Multi-Tech Embedded Solutions	
Universal Socket Connectivity Features	
The Universal Socket Design	
Universal Developer Kit Contents	
AT Commands for All Embedded Products Are Included on the Developer Kit CD	
Universal Socket Pin Out	
Universal Pin Descriptions	
Design Considerations	
Noise Suppression Design Considerations	
PC Board Layout Guidelines	
Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) Considerations	
Electrostatic Discharge Control	
Phone Line Warning Statement for the Developer Board	
Mechanical Drawing in Inches for the Listed Products	
Mechanical Drawing in Millimeters for Listed Products	
Maximum Component Height / PCB Length and Width	
SocketModem Developer Board	
Board Components	
Jumpers and Corresponding Signals	
SocketModem Developer Board Block Diagram	
Developer Board Schematics	
Upgrading Firmware	
XMODEM Serial Port Upgrade	
Wireless Information	
Antenna System for Wireless Devices	
Account Activation for Wireless Devices	
Analog Information	
-	
Recommended Parts for Analog SocketModems  Analog Labeling Requirements	
Safety Notices and Warnings	
•	
Wireless Safety	
Telecom Approvals for Analog Modems	
Regulatory Compliance Statements	
Country/Region-Specific Statements	
Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment Statement	
Restriction of the Use of Hazardous Substances (RoHS)	
Information on HS/TS Substances according to Chinese Standards in English	
Information on HS/TS Substances According to Chinese Standards in Chinese	
RT 2 - WIRELESS SOCKETMODEMS	

Product Build Options and Ordering Information	56
AT Commands Reference Guides	
Technical Specifications	57
DC Electrical Characteristics	58
Power Measurements	
Mechanical Drawings – Basic Build	60
Application Notes	
Flashing LED Interface	
RF Performances	
RF Connection and Antenna	64
Microphone Inputs	
Changing the Quad Band	
Global Positioning System (GPS)	
Technical Specifications	
Features Underwriters Laboratories Required Global Positioning System (GPS) Statement	
Office writers Laboratories Required Global Positioning System (GPS) Statement	00
Chapter 3 – SocketModem® CDMA (MTSMC-C1)	67
Introduction	67
Product Build Options and Ordering Information	67
AT Commands Reference Guides	67
Technical Specifications	68
Mechanical Drawings – Basic Build	70
DC Electrical Characteristics	
Power Measurements*	71
Application Notes	
Flashing LED Interface	
RF Interface	
RF Connection and Antenna	72
Provisioning a Generic SocketModem CDMA	
CDMA Terminology and Acronyms	74
Chapter 4 – SocketModem® EDGE (MTSMC-E1)	76
Introduction	
Product Build Options and Ordering Information	
AT Commands Reference Guide	
Technical Specifications	
Mechanical Drawings – Basic Build	
Mechanical Drawings – Voice Build	
DC Electrical Characteristics	
Power Measurements	
Application Notes	
RF Performances.	
RF Connection and Antenna	
Audio Interface – Electrical Characteristics	
Microphone Inputs	83
Chapter 5 - SocketModem® HSDPA (MTSMC-H)	8/
Introduction	
Product Build Options and Ordering Information	
AT Commands Reference Guide	
Technical Specifications	
Mechanical Drawings – Basic Build	
Mechanical Drawings – USB Build	
DC Electrical Characteristics	
Power Measurements*	
Application Notes	91

	1 4 5 6 6 7
RF Performances	
RF Connection and Antenna	*
Air Interface	
Baud Rate Switches on the HSDPA SocketModem	
Operating Modes	95
Turn off the SocketModem Using AT Command	
Automatic Shutdown	
Temperature Control during an Emergency Call	
Power Saving  Interface Signal Descriptions	
ART 3 – ANALOG SOCKETMODEMS	
Chapter 6 – SocketModem® (MT9234SMI)	
Introduction	
Product Build Options and Ordering Information	
AT Commands Reference Guide	
Technical Specifications	
SocketModem Pin Out	
Serial Pin Out	
Parallel Pin Out	•
DC Electrical Characteristics	
Parallel Timing Requirements	
SocketModem Parallel Interface Internal Registers	
Application Notes	
Tip and Ring Interface	
Chapter 7 – SocketModem® (MT5692SMI)	
Introduction	
Product Build Options and Ordering Information	
AT Commands Reference Guide	
Technical Specifications	
Pin Outs	
Operating Conditions	
Absolute Maximum Rating	
DC Electrical Characteristics	
Power* Measurements	
Parallel Host Bus Timing Table	
SocketModem Parallel Interface	
Register Functional Definitions	
Application Notes	
Tip and Ring Interface	
Microphone and Speaker	135
Chapter 8 - SocketModem® (MT2492SMI)	137
Introduction	137
Product Build Options and Ordering Information	137
AT Commands Reference Guide	137
Technical Specifications	138
SocketModem Pin Out	139
DC Electrical Characteristics	139
Application Notes	140
Tip and Ring Interface	140
Chanter 9 - SecketModem (MT2456SML22)	444
Chapter 9 – SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22) Introduction	
IIII OUUCIIOII	141

	1 4 5 1 6 1
Product Ordering Information	
AT Commands Reference Guide	
Technical Specifications	
SocketModem Configuration	
Serial Configuration	
Electrical Characteristics	
3.3V Serial SocketModem	
5V Serial SocketModem	
Applications Notes	
Tip and Ring Interface	145
PART 4 – EMBEDDED DEVICE SERVERS	146
Chapter 10 - SocketEthernet IP® (MT100SEM-IP)	147
Introduction	
Product Build Options and Ordering Information	147
AT Commands Reference Guide	147
Technical Specifications	148
SocketEthernet IP Pin Out	149
DC Electrical Characteristics	150
Power* Measurements	
Application Notes	151
Ethernet Interface – Non-Isolated Design	151
Ethernet Interface – Isolated Design	151
Recommended Parts	
The Windows-Based Auto-Discovery Manager	153
Chapter 11 - SocketWireless® Wi-Fi® (MT810SWM-IP)	155
Introduction	155
Product Build Options and Ordering Information	155
AT Commands Reference Guide	155
Technical Specifications	156
Mechanical Drawings	158
Mechanical Drawings	159
Operating Conditions	161
Absolute Maximum Rating	161
DC Electrical Characteristics	161
Power Measurements*	161
Application Notes	162
RF Interface	162
Default Power Up Settings	
Antenna Requirements and Sources	
Regulatory Requirements for the Wi-Fi Antenna	103
Chapter 12 - SocketWireless® Bluetooth® (MTS2BTSMI)	164
Introduction	164
Notes about Byte Gaps and Data Latency	164
Product Build Options and Ordering Information	
AT Commands Reference Guide	164
Technical Specifications	
SocketWireless Bluetooth Pin Out	166
DC Electrical Characteristics	166
Application Notes	167
RF Interface	
Sources for Peripheral Devices	
Default Power Up Settings  Example of a Master Discovery/Connection Sequence	
Multi Tech Systems Inc. Universal Socket Hardware Guide for Developers (S000342L)	109

#### Table of Contents

Ex	xample of a Slave Command Sequence	169
Di	isabling Flow Control Using AT Commands	170
	ther Examples	
	hanging Configuration	
Index		172

# Part 1 Universal Socket Connectivity

Chapter 1 - Universal Socket Connectivity

# Chapter 1 - Universal Socket Connectivity

#### Multi-Tech Embedded Solutions

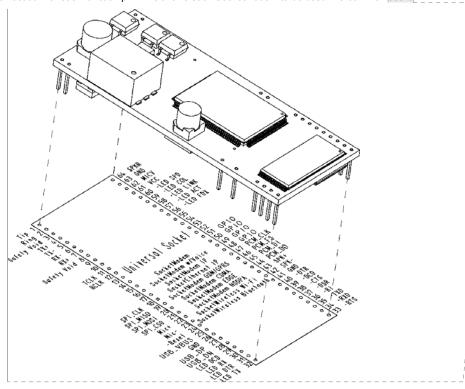
Multi-Tech's embedded device networking solutions instantly add communication ability to your existing or new product with minimal engineering effort giving you an edge on your competition while accelerating your time-to-market. Our universal socket family of embedded solutions is designed around a flexible comm-port architecture to provide analog dial-up, cellular, Wi-Fi or Bluetooth® wireless, or Ethernet socket connectivity with interchangeable socket devices. This means you can utilize one system design and populate it with your preferred connectivity option giving you flexibility and a seamless migration path to future technologies.

#### Universal Socket Connectivity Features

- · Flexible comm-port architecture
- Interchangeable socket devices
- Cost-effective system design
- · Easy migration to future technologies
- Complete global compliance

#### The Universal Socket Design

Each pin on a SocketModem corresponds to a particular function. The universal socket design provides a universal location for each function pin. This allows each SocketModem to be used in a common board.



Comment [DAR2]: Saved as Universal SocketModem with pins.png 81KB saved in New graphics for K

Comment [DAR3]: Pin
Out\_assignment\_overview\_fromDean
\_p5.png

#### Universal Developer Kit Contents

Products described in this guide can be used to develop and evaluate your products and applications using the MTSMI-UDK (Universal Developer Kit).

- Developer Board: One MTSMI-UDK Developer Board
- Power Supply: One 100-240V 9V-1A power supply with removable blades:
  - One US blade/plug
  - ◆ One EURO blade/plug
  - One UK blade/plug
- Cables
  - One RJ-45 Ethernet cable
  - ◆ One RJ-11 phone cable
  - ◆ One DB9F-DB25M serial cable
  - ◆ One 1.5 meter USB cable
- Antenna Cables
  - One SMA-to-MMCX antenna cable (for cellular antennas)
  - Two SMA-to-UFL antenna cables (one for select cellular antennas and one for the GPS antenna)
  - One RSMA-to-UFL antenna cable (for Bluetooth and Wi-Fi antennas)
- Antennas
  - One quad band antenna 850/1900/900/1800 (for cellular modems)
  - ◆ One 2.4GHz, ½ WAVE antenna with reverse polarity (for Bluetooth and Wi-Fi devices)
  - One GPS antenna (for the SocketModem iCell)
- Modern Activation Customer Notices (included on the Universal Socket Connectivity Developer CD)
  - Aeris
  - CDMA
  - ◆ Cellcom
  - GSM
  - IVC
  - Sprint
  - Verizon
- One Universal Socket Connectivity Developer CD
- . One Promotional Screwdriver

# AT Commands for All Embedded Products Are Included on the Developer Kit CD

#### **AT Commands**

Multi-Tech provides Reference Guides for each SocketModem's AT commands. These reference guides are available on the CD included in the Developer Kit. They are also available by email at <a href="mailto:oemsales@multitech.com">mailto:oemsales@multitech.com</a> or by using the *Developer Guide Request Form* on Multi-Tech's Web site.

#### Fax Commands for Analog Modems

Fax Commands are included in the AT Command Reference Guide when applicable to the product. They are available on the CD included in the Developer Kit.

Note: Fax Commands supported by product:

- SocketModem MT9234SMI supports all Class 1 and Class 2 commands (Class 1, 1.0, 2, 2.0/2.1)
- SocketModem MT5692SMI supports Class 1 & 1.0

#### Universal Socket Pin Out

(I/O) Tip 1 (I/O) Ring 2 Safety Void 3 (O) TX+ 4 (O) TX- 5 (I) RX- 6 (I) RX+ 7 Safety Void 8 9 10 (O) TCLK 11	0 0 × 0 0 0 0 × 0	Universal Socket	000000000	64 SPKR (O) 63 GND (I) 62 MICV (I) 61 VCC (I) 60 -LED SPD (O) 59 -LED COL (O) 58 -LED LINK (O) 57 -LED ACT (O) 56 -LED FDX (O) 55 55
(O) RCLK 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 (I) Mic+ 22 (I) Mic- 23 (I) -Reset 24 (I) USB_VBUS 25 (I) GND 26 (I/O) USB_DD 28 (I/O) USB_DD 28 (O) LED DCD 29 (O) LED DCD 29 (O) LED DTR 31 (O) LED TX 32	0 0000000000	SocketModem SocketModem IP SocketEthernet IP SocketModem GPRS SocketModem CDMA SocketModem EDGE SocketModem HSDPA SocketWireless Wi-Fi SocketWireless Bluetooth	0000000000000000000	53 52 51 GPIO (I/O) 50 GPIO (I/O) 49 GPIO (I/O) 48 GPIO (I/O) 47 46 45 44 43 SPK+ (O) 41 GND (I) 40 -DTR (I) 39 -DCD (O) 38 -CTS (O) 37 -DSR (O) 36 -RI (O) 35 -TXD (I) 34 -RXD (O) 33 -RTS (I)

Comment [DAR4]: Pin Out\_Universal\_July\_2008\_p14..png & FH9 7/14/08

Top View - Universal SocketModem Pin Out

Comment [DAR5]: SocketModem Uiversal Pinout flat view. png -- saved in Graphics new in Rev K -- 50 KB

#### Universal Pin Descriptions

Pin	Signal Name	In/Out	Description
1	Tip	I/O	<b>Tip Signal from Telco</b> . Tip connection to the phone line (RJ-11 Pin 4). The SocketModem is Tip/Ring polarity insensitive.
2	Ring	I/O	Ring Signal from Telco. Ring connection to the phone line (RJ-11 Pin 3). The SocketModem is Tip/Ring polarity insensitive.
3	Safety Void	NA	Safety Clearance. 2.5 mm is required between TNV circuits and SELV circuits.
4	TX+	0	<b>Transmit Outputs (TX+ and TX-)</b> . Differential transmit outputs for Ethernet and ISDN.
5	TX-	0	Transmit Outputs (TX+ and TX-). Differential transmit outputs for Ethernet and ISDN.
6	RX-	I	Receive Inputs. Differential receive input pins for Ethernet. Dummy pin for MT810SWM-IP.
7	RX+	I	Receive Inputs. Differential receive input pins for Ethernet.
8	Safety Void	NA	Safety Clearance. 2.5 mm is required between TNV circuits and SELV circuits.
9	Dummy		Dummy pin for EDGE.
11	TCLK	0	Transmit Data Sync Clock. TX synchronous data clock for ISDN sync data mode.
12	RCLK	0	Receive Data Sync Clock. RX synchronous data clock for ISDN sync data mode.
22	MIC+	İ	Microphone positive input. See microphone sections in GPRS, CDMA, EDGE chapters.
23	MIC-	Ī	Microphone negative input. See microphone sections in GPRS, CDMA, EDGE chapters.

Pin	Signal Name	In/Out	Description				
24	-RESET*	_	<b>Device Reset</b> (with pull-up). The active low –RESET input resets the device logic and returns the configuration of the device to the original factory default values or "stored values" in the NVRAM. –RESET is tied to VCC through a time-constant				
			circuit for "Power-on-Reset" functionality. The SocketModem is ready to accept commands after a fixed amount of time ("X" Time) after power-on or reset.				
			Model Time Constant "X" Time Minimum Reset Pulse*				
			MTSMC-G2 250 ms 6 seconds 100us				
			MTSMC-C1 250 ms 3-15 seconds 500us				
			MTSMC-E1 250 ms 3-15 seconds 500us				
			MTSMC-H 250 ms 10 seconds 100us				
			MT9234SMI 400 ms 6 seconds 100us				
			MT5692SMI 250 ms 6 seconds 100us				
			MT2492SMI 250 ms 6 seconds 100us				
			MT100SEM-IP 250 ms 6 seconds 100us MT810SWM-IP 250 ms 6 seconds 100us				
			MTS2BTSMI 250 ms 6 seconds 100us				
			*The SocketModem device may respond to a shorter reset pulse.				
			Reset Line Interface for the MT5692SMI. The modem's reset line employs a 10K				
			pull up resistor. If an open collector driver is to be used, run that output to the				
			modem only and use a separate driver for other embedded components. The				
			modem's reset signal may also be driven by a circuit that both sinks and sources				
			current if desired. It is also important to note that these modems do not require an				
			external reset. They have their own internal reset circuitry and voltage monitor and will function correctly even if the reset input is open.				
			Reset GPRS and CDMA (MTSMC-G2 and MTSMC-C1). This signal is used to				
			force a reset procedure by providing low level during reset of at least 500us. The				
			signal is considered an emergency reset only. A reset procedure is already driven				
			by internal hardware during the power-up sequence. If no external reset is				
			necessary, this input can be left open. If used (emergency reset), it has to be driven				
			by an open collector or an open drain.				
			Reset EDGE with pull-up (MTSMC-E1). The active low –RESET input resets the				
			device logic and returns the configuration of the device to the original factory default				
			values of "stored values" in the NVRAM. The SocketModem is ready to accept commands after a fixed amount of time after power-on or reset.				
25	USB VBUS		USB Voltage Sense. Senses the voltage level of the USB to determine if the bus is				
23	000_000	•	available.				
26	GND	GND	Logic Ground.				
27	USB_DP	I/O	USB Data Positive. Positive pin of the USB data pair.				
28	USB_DN	I/O	USB Data Negative. Negative pin of the USB data pair.				
29	LED DCD	0	DCD (Active High). Output from 74LCX14 with a 1000 Ohms resistor in series.				
			SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI): When lit, indicates a connection. No				
30	LED RX	0	series resistor.				
30	LED KX	U	RX (Active High). Output from 74LCX14 with a 1000 Ohms resistor in series.  SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI): No series resistor.				
31	LED DTR	0	DTR (Active High). Output from 74LCX14 with a 1000 Ohms resistor in series.				
			SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI): No series resistor.				
32	LED TX	0	TX (Active High). Output from 74LCX14 with a 1000 Ohms resistor in series.  SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI): No series resistor.				
33	-RTS	I	Request to Send (Active Low). –RTS is controlled by the DTE to indicated				
			whether or not the DTE is ready to receive data. –RTS ON (low) indicates that the				
			DTE is ready to receive data from the modem on RXD. –RTS OFF indicates to the				
			SocketModem that it should not transfer data on the RXD.				
1			In the command state, the modern ignores –RTS.				
			<b>Note:</b> When the –RTS pin is not in use, it should be tied low.				

<sup>\*</sup> RESET – A Design Consideration: Allowing the host processor to control the RESET line of the SocketModem provides the benefit of allowing the host to reset the device in the event of a failure to respond normally. Resetting the SocketModem will return it to a known functional state.

Comment [DAR6]: For all builds -- Dustin 8/24/09

Comment [DAR7]: New from Tim Gunn 07/14/09

Comment [DAR8]: Bud wondered if this text is for E1 too (it was used with initial EDGE). It's in the section that describes the pin functionality. 9/8/09 review:

Reset EDGE with pull-up (MTSMC-E1).

Dustin's answer

Original edge documentation is incorrect. You could probably remove:

remove:

-RESET is tied to VCC through a time-constant circuit for "Power-on-Reset" functionality.

Pin	Signal Name	In/Out	Description		
34	-RXD	0	Received Data. The SocketModem uses the RXD line to send data to the DTE and to send SocketModem responses to the DTE. In command mode, –RXD data presents the SocketModem responses to the DTE. SocketModem responses take priority over incoming data when the two signals are in competition for –RXD. When no data is transmitted, the signal is held in mark condition.		
35	–TXD	_	<b>Transmitted Data</b> . The DTE uses the –TXD line to send data to the SocketModem for transmission or to transmit commands to the SocketModem. The DTE holds this circuit in mark state when no data is being transmitted or during intervals between characters.		
36	-RI	0	RING (Active Low). Incoming ring signal from phone.  Ring Indicate. –RI output ON (low) indicates the presence of an ON segment of a ring signal on the telephone line. The modem will not go off-hook when –RI is active; the modem waits for –RI to go inactive before going off-hook.  SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI). Strobes 1/sec for slave indication.		
37	-DSR	0	<b>Data Set Ready (Active Low)</b> . –DSR indicates SocketModem status to the DTE. – DSR OFF (high) indicates that the DTE is to disregard all signals appearing on the interchange circuits except Ring Indicator (–RI). It reflects the status of the local data set and does not indicate an actual link with any remote data equipment.		
38	-CTS	0	Clear to Send (Active Low). –CTS is controlled by the SocketModem to indicate whether or not the SocketModem is ready to transmit data. –CTS ON indicates to the DTE that signals on TXD will be transmitted. –CTS OFF indicates to the DTE that it should not transfer data on TXD.		
39	-DCD	0	Data Carrier Detect (Active Low). –DCD output is ON (low) when a data connection is established and the SocketModem is ready to send/receive data.		
40	-DTR	I	Data Terminal Ready (Active Low). The –DTR input is turned ON (low) when the DTE is ready to communicate. –DTR ON prepares the modem to be connected, and, once connected, maintains the connection. –DTR OFF places the modem in the disconnect state under control of the &Dn and &Qn commands.  Note: When the –DTR pin is not in use, it should be tied low.		
41	GND	GND	Logic Ground.		
42	SPK-	0	Wireless GPRS, CDMA, and EDGE. Negative analog speaker output.		
43	SPK+	0	Wireless GPRS, CDMA, and EDGE. Positive analog speaker output.		
48	GPIO	I/O	General Purpose Input/Output. User-configurable input or output pin.		
49	GPIO	I/O	General Purpose Input/Output. User-configurable input or output pin.		
50	GPI0	I/O	General Purpose Input/Output. User-configurable input or output pin.		
51	GPIO	I/O	General Purpose Input/Output. User-configurable input or output pin.		
56	–LED FDX	0	<b>LED Full Duplex (Active Low)</b> . LED Output. During normal operation, this pin lights the FDX LED to indicate a full duplex mode.		
57	–LED ACT	0	<b>LED Active (Active Low)</b> . LED Output. During normal operation, this pin lights the Activity LED when transmitting or receiving. It flashes at a rate of 50ms high and 50ms low when active.		
58	- LEDLINK	0	<b>LED LINK (Active Low)</b> . LED Output. During normal operation, this pin lights the LINK LED to indicate a good link is detected.		

Pin 58 LED Mode	Operating Status				
<b>Note:</b> Pin 58 may or may not be available shipping.	able on some EDGE/GPRS/CDMA SocketModems currently				
Off	Subscriber Carrier Mode is OFF or running in SLEEP mode or Alarm mode.				
600 ms ON / 600ms OFF	No SIM card inserted or no PIN entered, or network search in progress, or ongoing user authentication, or network login in progress.				
75 ms ON / 75 ms OFF / 75 ms ON	One or more EDGE/GPRS/CDMA contexts activated.				
3 s OFF	Indicates EDGE/GPRS/CDMA data transfer: When a transfer is				
Flashing	in progress, the LED goes on within 1 second after data				
	packets were exchanged. Flash duration is approximately 0.5 s.				
ON	Depending on type of call:				
	Voice Call: Connected to remote party.				
	Data Call: Connected to remote party or exchange of				
	parameters while setting up or disconnecting a call.				

Pin	Signal	In/Out	Description		
	Name				
59	-	0	<b>LED Collision (Active Low)</b> . LED Output. During normal operation, this pin lights		
	LEDCOL		the COL LED to indicate a collision. It flashes at 50ms high and 50ms low when		
			active.		
60	_	0	LED Speed (Active Low). LED Output. During normal operation, this pin lights the		
	LEDSPD		SPEED LED to indicate 100Mbps is selected.		
61	VCC	PWR	DC Input Power. 3.3V or 5VDC power, depending upon the build.		
62	MICV		Single-Ended Microphone. Single-ended microphone input for dial-up		
			SocketModem speakerphone and TAM functions.		
63	AGND	GND	Analog Ground. Analog ground is tied common with DGND on the SocketModem.		
			To minimize potential ground noise issues, connect audio circuit return to AGND.		
64	SPKR	0	<b>Speaker</b> . Dual purpose output for call progress signals or speakerphone functions.		
			Call Progress signaling on MT5692SMI and MT2492SMI is a square wave output		
			that can be optionally connected to a low-cost single-ended speaker; e.g., a		
			sounducer or an analog speaker circuit.		
			Call progress on the MT9234SMI is an analog output.		
			Speakerphone Output on the MT5692SMI is under the control of +FCLASS. This		
			is a single-ended analog output. SPKR is tied directly to the CODEC. One side of a		
			differential AC output coupled through a 6.8K ohm resistor and capacitor.		

#### Design Considerations

#### Noise Suppression Design Considerations

Engineering noise-suppression practices must be adhered to when designing a printed circuit board (PCB) containing the SocketModem. Suppression of noise is essential to the proper operation and performance of the modem itself and for surrounding equipment.

Two aspects of noise in an OEM board design containing the SocketModem must be considered: on-board/off-board generated noise that can affect digital signal processing. Both on-board and off-board generated noise that is coupled on-board can affect interface signal levels and quality. Of particular concern is noise in frequency ranges affecting modem performance.

On-board generated electromagnetic interference (EMI) noise that can be radiated or conducted off-board is a separate, but equally important, concern. This type of noise can affect the operation of surrounding equipment. Most local government agencies have stringent certification requirements that must be met for use in specific environments.

Proper PC board layout (component placement, signal routing, trace thickness and geometry, etc.) component selection (composition, value, and tolerance), interface connections, and shielding are required for the board design to achieve desired modem performance and to attain EMI certification.

Other aspects of proper noise-suppression engineering practices are beyond the scope of this designer guide. The designer should consult noise suppression techniques described in technical publications and journals, electronics and electrical engineering text books, and component supplier application notes.

#### PC Board Layout Guidelines

In a 4-layer design, provide adequate ground plane covering the entire board. In 4-layer designs, power and ground are typically on the inner layers. All power and ground traces should be 0.05 inches wide.

The recommended hole size for the SocketModem pins is 0.036 in. +/-0.003 in. in diameter. Spacers can be used to hold the SocketModem vertically in place during the wave solder process.

All creepages and clearances for the SocketModem have been designed to meet requirements of safety standards EN60950 or EN60601. The requirements are based on a working voltage of 125V or 250V. When the recommended DAA\* circuit interface is implemented in a third party design, all creepage and clearance requirements must be strictly followed in order to meet safety standards. The third party safety design must be evaluated by the appropriate national agency per the required specification.

User accessible areas: Based on where the third party design is to be marketed, sold, or used, it may be necessary to provide an insulating cover over all TNV exposed areas. Consult with the recognized safety agency to determine the requirements.

**Note:** Even if the recommended design considerations are followed, there are no guarantees that a particular system will comply with all the necessary regulatory requirements. It is imperative that specific designs be completely evaluated by a qualified/recognized agency.

\*DAA stands for Data Access Arrangement. DAA is the telephone line interface of the SocketModem.

# Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) Considerations

The following guidelines are offered specifically to help minimize EMI generation. Some of these guidelines are the same as, or similar to, the general guidelines but are mentioned again to reinforce their importance. In order to minimize the contribution of the SocketModem-based design to EMI, the designer must understand the major sources of EMI and how to reduce them to acceptable levels.

- 1. Keep traces carrying high frequency signals as short as possible.
- Provide a good ground plane or grid. In some cases, a multilayer board may be required with full layers for ground and power distribution.
- Decouple power from ground with decoupling capacitors as close to the SocketModem power pins as possible.
- 4. Eliminate ground loops, which are unexpected current return paths to the power source and ground.
- 5. Decouple the telephone line cables at the telephone line jacks. Typically, use a combination of series inductors, common mode chokes, and shunt capacitors. Methods to decouple telephone lines are similar to decoupling power lines; however, telephone line decoupling may be more difficult and deserves additional attention. A commonly used design aid is to place footprints for these components and populate as necessary during performance/EMI testing and certification.
- **6.** Decouple the power cord at the power cord interface with decoupling capacitors. Methods to decouple power lines are similar to decoupling telephone lines.
- 7. Locate high frequency circuits in a separate area to minimize capacitive coupling to other circuits.
- 8. Locate cables and connectors so as to avoid coupling from high frequency circuits.
- 9. Lay out the highest frequency signal traces next to the ground grid.
- 10. If a multilayer board design is used, make no cuts in the ground or power planes and be sure the ground plane covers all traces.
- 11. Minimize the number of through-hole connections on traces carrying high frequency signals.
- 12. Avoid right angle turns on high frequency traces. Forty-five degree corners are good; however, radius turns are better
- 13. On 2-layer boards with no ground grid, provide a shadow ground trace on the opposite side of the board to traces carrying high frequency signals. This will be effective as a high frequency ground return if it is three times the width of the signal traces.
- **14.** Distribute high frequency signals continuously on a single trace rather than several traces radiating from one point.

#### Electrostatic Discharge Control

All electronic devices should be handled with certain precautions to avoid damage due to the accumulation of static charge.

See the ANSI/ESD Association Standard (ANSI/ESD S20.20-1999) – a document "for the Development of an Electrostatic Discharge Control for Protection of Electrical and Electronic Parts, Assemblies and Equipment." This document covers ESD Control Program Administrative Requirements, ESD Training, ESD Control Program Plan Technical Requirements (grounding/bonding systems, personnel grooming, protected areas, packaging, marking, equipment, and handling), and Sensitivity Testing.

Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. strives to follow all of these recommendations. Input protection circuitry has been incorporated into the Multi-Tech devices to minimize the effect of this static buildup, proper precautions should be taken to avoid exposure to electrostatic discharge during handling.

Multi-Tech uses and recommends that others use anti-static boxes that create a faraday cage (packaging designed to exclude electromagnetic fields). Multi-Tech recommends that you use our packaging when returning a product and when you ship your products to your customers.

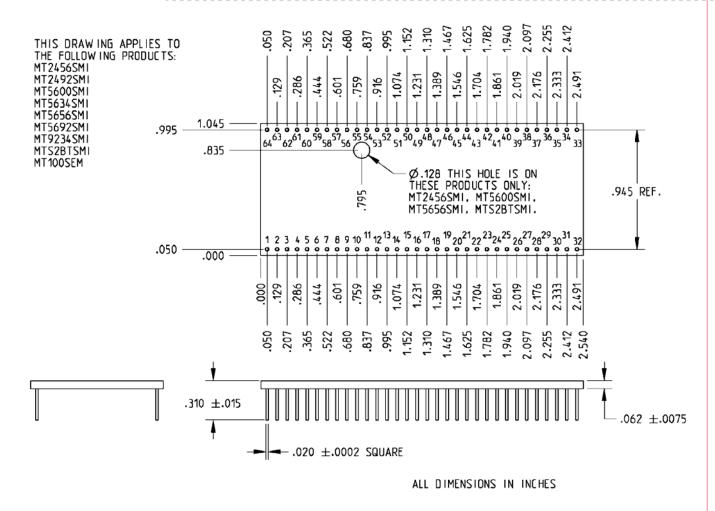
# Phone Line Warning Statement for the Developer Board

Use extreme caution when the phone line is installed due to live energized components. In fact, do not touch any components on the board while the phone line is installed.

In addition, the phone line should be detached when making modifications to or servicing the developer board.

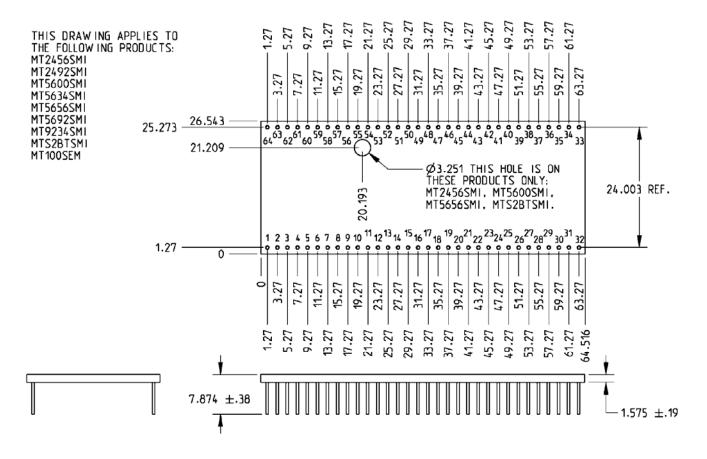
#### Mechanical Drawing in Inches for the Listed Products

Comment [DAR9]: Mechanical Drawing for Analog Modems from Dean 4-16-09.png



#### Mechanical Drawing in Millimeters for Listed Products

**Comment [DAR10]:** Mechanical Drawing for Analog Modems-Metric from Dean 4-16-09.png



ALL DIMENSIONS IN MILLIMETERS

#### Maximum Component Height / PCB Length and Width

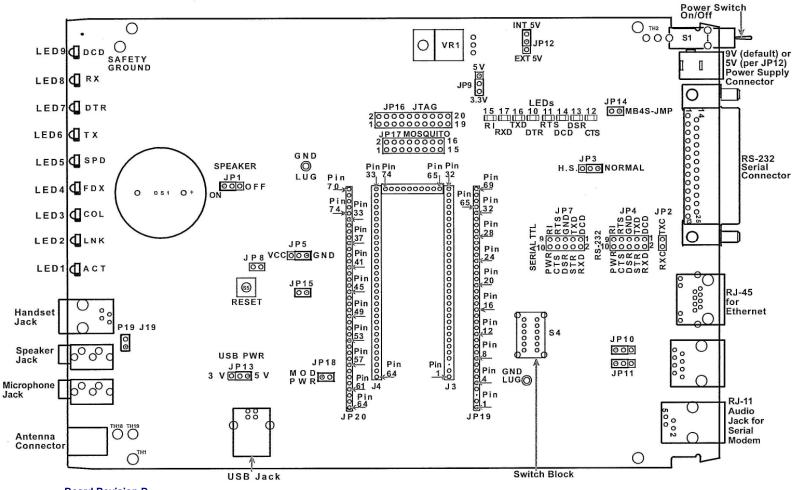
This is a companion table for the mechanical drawings on the two previous pages.

If a product does not appear in this table, it is because it has a detailed mechanical drawing that provides this information and much more in the specific product chapter.

Product	Maximum Component Height on the Top Side of the Board	Maximum Component Height on the Bottom Side of the Board	Length	Width
Embedded Analog SocketModems				
SocketModem – MT9234SMI	.290" (7.366 mm)	.115" (2.921 mm)	2.54" (64.541 mm)	1.045" (26.543 mm)
SocketModem – MT5692SMI	.213" (5.410 mm)	.115" (2.921 mm)	2.54" (64.541 mm)	1.045" (26.543 mm)
SocketModem – MT2492SMI	.177" (4.495 mm)	NA	2.54" (64.541 mm)	1.045" (26.543 mm)
Embedded Device Servers				
SocketModem IP – MT2456SMI-IP	.228" (5.791 mm)	.114" (2.895 mm)	2.54" (64.541 mm)	1.045" (26.543 mm)
SocketEthernet IP – MT100SEM-IP	.341" (8.661 mm)	.115" (2.921 mm)	2.54" (64.541 mm)	1.045" (26.543 mm)
SocketWireless Bluetooth - MTS2BTSMI	.089" (2.260 mm)	NA	2.54" (64.541) mm)	1.045" (26.543 mm)

#### SocketModem Developer Board

This developer board drawing shows the major board components for all SocketModems.



**Board Revision B** 

See the next page for description of Board Components

Comment [DAR11]: Board B for Universal 260b0\_forRev J jumper fixed 2 29grayscale50percent.gif done 8/5/09

#### Board Components

Jumper	Description				
JP1	Mutes the speaker. Default positions are 1 and 2 (speaker is not muted).				
JP2	Ties the TX and RX clock lines together. Default positions are 1 and 2 (transmit and receive				
	clock act independently).				
JP3	Sets the data rate. NORMAL sets the data rate at 250kbps.				
	H.S. (high speed serial communications) sets the data rate at 1Mbps.				
JP4	Testing interface (debugging) for the RS-232 signals.				
JP5	JP5 acts as a replacement for pin 45 when pin 45 is used for another function.				
JP7	Testing interface (debugging) for the serial TTL signals.				
JP9	JP9 is the 5V / 3.3V regulator. The factory default operating voltage is 3.3V.				
	Warning – Be sure that the 5V / 3.3V jumper is set to match the requirements of your				
	SocketModem. If this jumper is set incorrectly, damage to the SocketModem and/or the				
	Test/Demo card could result.				
	Caution – Use only the provided Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. transformer with the Test/Demo				
	board. Use of any other power source will void the warranty and will likely damage the				
	Test/Demo board and the SocketModem. The transformer connector is keyed to prevent				
	improper connection to the Test/Demo board.				
JP12	JP12 allows you to select either the internal 5V regulator (INT 5V) or to choose EXT 5V. For				
	the EXT 5V, you can use your own external 5V power source and plug it into J7.				
JP13	Set either 5V or 3.3V for USB_VBUS line (supplied by the VCC of the USB jack).				
JP14	Internal testing.				
JP15	JP15 disconnects pin 45 from SLP with JP5 (the RS-232 driver sleep mode).				
JP16	JTAG header.				
JP17	Mosquito header. If used to debug the SocketModem while using the USB port, then the JP14				
	would have to be removed to disconnect USB_VBUS.				
JP18	Power feed for area where SocketModems are placed (J24).				
JP19 & JP20	Debugging probes.				
JP25 & JP26	Ground lug.				
S4	Set the switch block to the product being used.				
S5	Reset				

#### Jumpers and Corresponding Signals

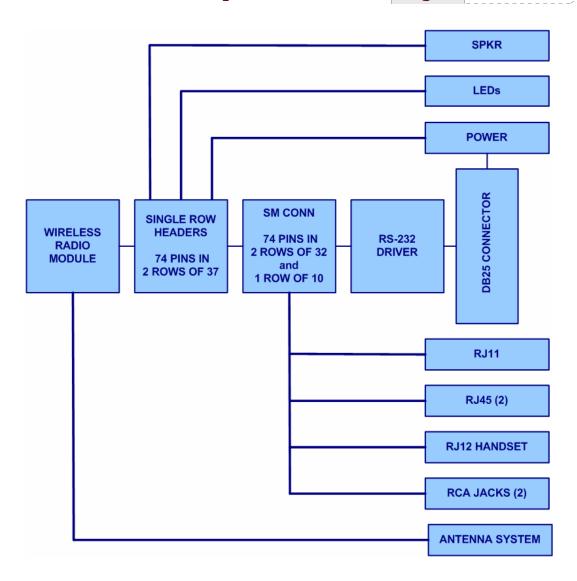
J4 and J7						
10	PWR	9	RI			
8	CTS	7	RTS			
6	DSR	5	GND			
4	DTR	3	TXD			
2	RXD	1	DCD			

J2 and J13					
JZ aliu J IJ					
2 RX	C 1 TXC				

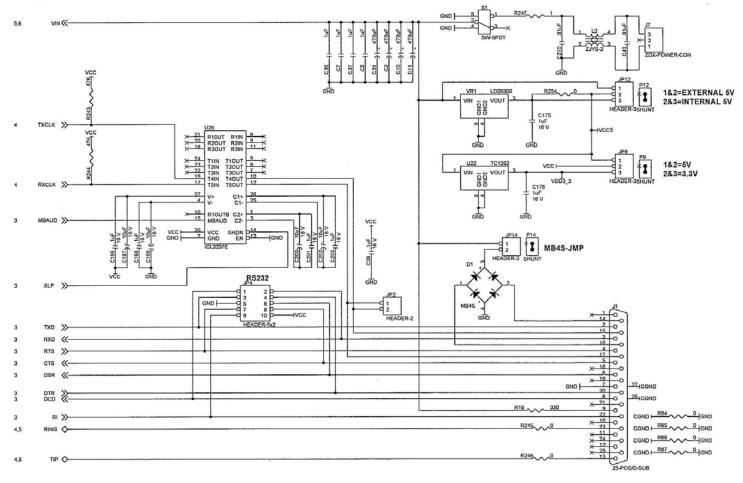
JP10	JP11
TX Term	RX Term

#### SocketModem Developer Board Block Diagram

Comment [DAR12]: C:\ Universal SocketModem\Graphics ETC Rev \Block diagram board B\Block diagram board B w antenna.png. 38 KB



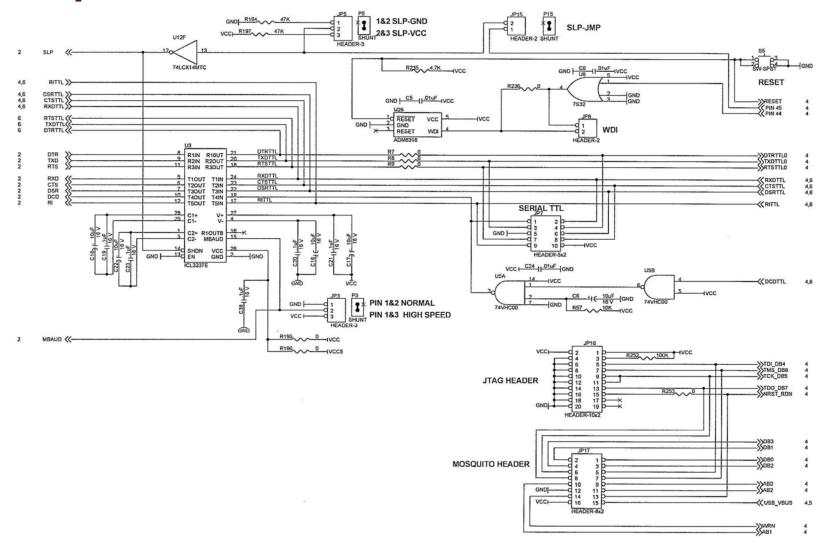
#### Developer Board Schematics



#### **Board Revision B**

Comment [DAR13]: Schematics Board B page 2 Scan0576\_000.jpg did not change to gif -- file was already small

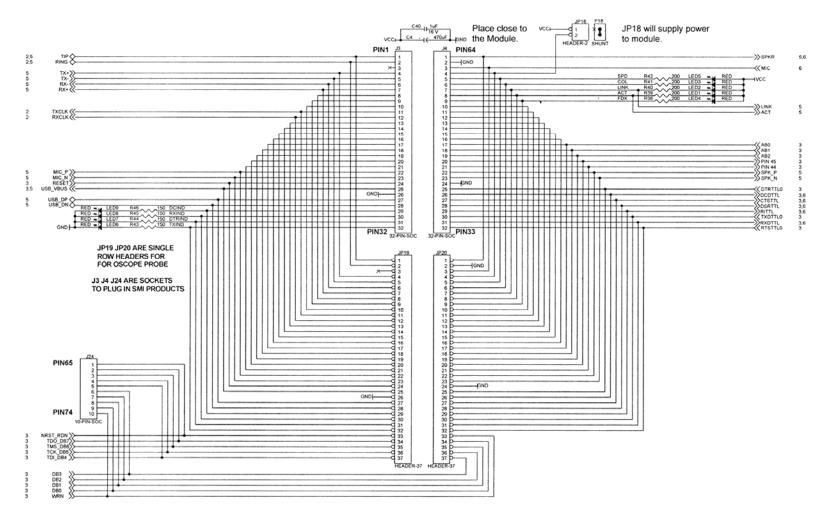
#### Developer Board Schematics



#### Board Revision B

Comment [DAR14]: Schematics Board B page 3 Scan0577\_000 grayscale50percent.gif (changed from jpg to make the file size smaller 8/5/09)

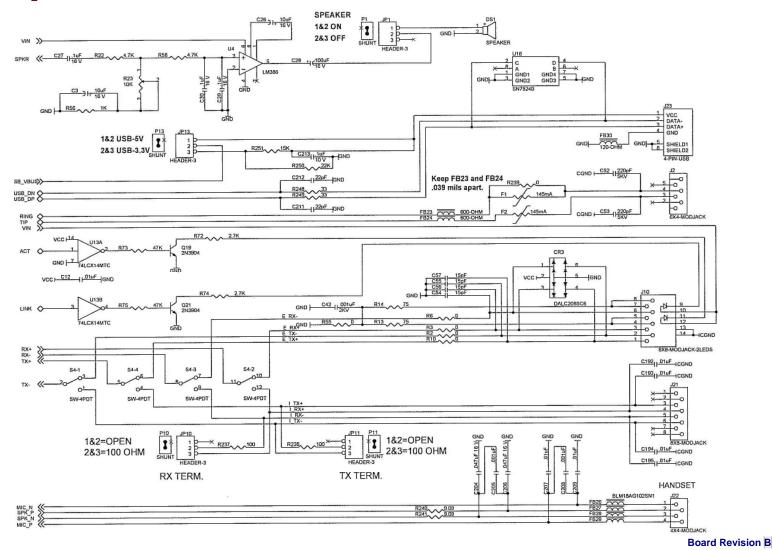
#### Developer Board Schematics



**Board Revision B** 

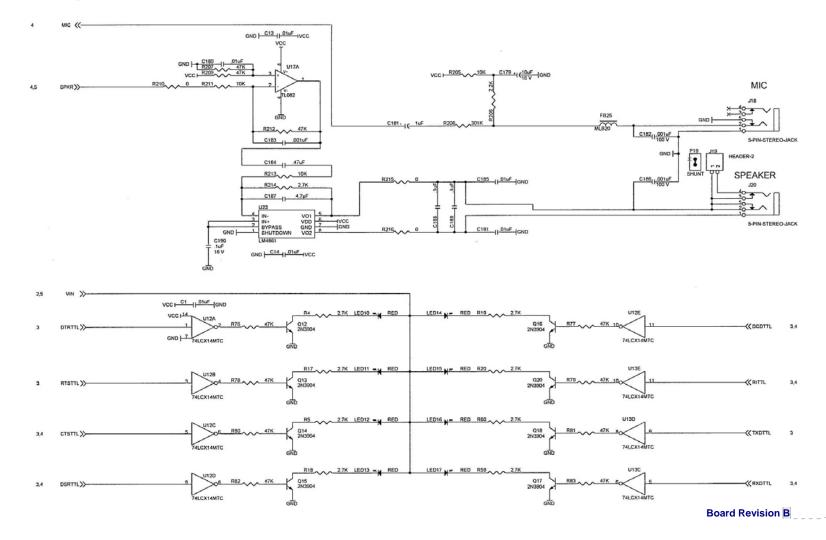
Comment [DAR15]: Schematics Board B page 4 Scan0575\_000grayscale.gif (was jpg - now a gif for a smaller file 8/5/09

#### Developer Board Schematics



Comment [DAR16]: Schmatics Board B page 5 Scan0574\_000grayscale50percent.gif (was jpg but file was too large. Now gif 8/5/09)

#### Developer Board Schematics



Comment [DAR17]: Schematics Board B page 6 Scan0573\_000.jpg did not change to gif -- file was aleady small

#### Upgrading Firmware

Your modem is controlled by semi-permanent firmware, which is stored in flash memory. Multi-Tech's firmware is nonvolatile; that is, it remains stored in memory when the modem is turned off and can be upgraded as new features are added.

Multi-Tech's Flash Wizard can be downloaded from Multi-Tech's FTP site and is available on CD. Use this Flash Wizard for upgrading your firmware. Documentation for using the Flash Wizard is included with the wizard.

The following table shows you which products support the Flash Wizard.

Wireless SocketModems	
SocketModem GPRS MTSMC-G2	Do not use the Flash Wizard for the wireless modems. Contact Multi-Tech for wireless modem firmware upgrade directions.
SocketModem CDMA MTSMC-C1	Do not use the Flash Wizard for the wireless modems. Contact Multi-Tech for wireless modem firmware upgrade directions.
SocketModem EDGE MTSMC-E1	Do not use the Flash Wizard for the wireless modems. Contact Multi-Tech for wireless modem firmware upgrade directions.
SocketWireless HSDPA	Do not use the Flash Wizard for the wireless modems. Contact Multi-Tech for wireless modem firmware upgrade directions.
Analog SocketModems	
SocketModem MT9234SMI	Flash Wizard Software for Windows®, Mac OSX, Linux Multi-Tech Flash Protocol
SocketModem MT5692SMI and SocketModem MT5692SMI-IP	Flash Wizard Software for Windows®, Mac OSX, Linux Can use ASCII upload via terminal emulator.
SocketModem MT2492SMI	No Flash Upgrade.
Embedded Device Servers	
SocketEthernet IP MT100SEM-IP	Flash Wizard Software for Windows®, Mac OSX, Linux Can use ASCII upload via terminal emulator.
SocketWireless Wi-Fi MT810SWM-IP	XMODEM serial port upgrade. See the next page for information about using the XMODEM upgrade.
SocketWireless Bluetooth MTS2BTSMI	Do not use the Flash Wizard for the wireless modems. Contact Multi-Tech for wireless modem firmware upgrade directions.

Flash Wizard Software for Windows®: <a href="mailto:ftp://ftp.multitech.com/Utilities/FlashWizard/">ftp://ftp.multitech.com/Utilities/FlashWizard/</a>

Flash Wizard Software for Linux: http://mtflashwiz.sourceforge.net/

#### XMODEM Serial Port Upgrade

This upgrade procedure applies only to the MT810SWM-IP and the older product MTXCSEM.

The IP communications device, for example, contains a 2 MB flash wherein the boot image, the firmware and configuration files are stored in a compressed format. The flash can easily be upgraded both locally as well as remotely.

Comment [DAR18]: Removed all direct references to the SocketEthernet IP. Kevin said this applies to these 2 products 8/09

#### Serial Port Upgrade

The flash of the can be upgraded locally through serial port using the upload feature of serial applications.

#### **Serial Port Configuration**

The default serial port parameters should be:

Data length - 8 bits

Parity - None

Stop bits - 1

Baud-rate of the serial port to which the communications device is connected should be set to 115200 bps for proper operation.

#### Example of a Serial Flash Upgrade

Following steps explain the procedure to upgrade a flash using the serial COM port (serial flash upgrade).

Connect the communications device to a PC COM Port.

- Open an application through which we can access the serial device (e.g., Meterm, zoc, hyperterm).
- Reboot the communications device.
- Wait for the boot message and prompt "press d to download" to appear.
- Press **d** when prompted.
- Select the XMODEM Protocol from the Terminal application.
- Choose a file to be uploaded.
- Perform a file upload.

The communications device reboots and will be up after a few seconds (10-15 seconds).

Caution: Refrain from powering off the device during flash upgrade.

Comment [DAR19]: Removed "TFTP Ethernet Upgrade" section. Darrick said it applied only to the MTXCSEM which this manual no longer covers.

# Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. Flash Programming Protocol

This information is provided exclusively for the users of Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. SocketModems, specifically the **MT9234SMI**. Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. SocketModem owners have the right to use, modify, and incorporate this code into other products provided they include the Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. notice and the associated copyright notice with any such product.

Copyright (C) Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. 1995 All Right Reserved

The flash programming protocol is provided "AS IS" without warranty.

**Important:** When interacting with the boot code, it is possible to make the modem inoperable.

Use extreme caution.

#### **Programming the Modem**

There are two ways to start flash programming a modem. It can be programmed

- 1. From "AT" mode
- 2. When the modem powers up.

The following table shows how a modem is programmed.

DTE	Modem	Comments		
AT*FS\r		This effectively "restarts" the modem so that it enters the boot code.		
Handshake Sequence				
M's		Many M's are sent (10 milliseconds apart) at 19200 baud. This is where the handshake starts if the modem is just powered up.		
	U	U is sent at 19200 baud if M's are received within 100 milliseconds of power up. If the M's are not received within 100 milliseconds, then the modem starts up normally. If the AT*FS command is used, then you have 1 second (1000mS) to perform the handshake.		
D		Sent at 19200 baud.		
	M	M if can receive at 9600/19200/38400/57600/115200		
	IJJK L M	I if modem will be programmed at 9600 J if modem will be programmed at 19200 K if modem will be programmed at 38400 L if modem will be programmed at 57600 M if modem will be programmed at 115200		
	$\r\nOK\r\n$	Modem is ready to be programmed		
Program Seq				
DTE	Modem	Comments		
ATFLP\r		Request to the modem to program		
	G	Modem is ready for next program packet		
[Length High]		High byte of data packet length		
[Length Low]		Low byte of data packet length Packet lengths can be up to 4096 bytes in size for most boot code versions		
[Address High]		High byte of program address		
[Address Middle]		Middle byte of program address		
[Address Low]		Low byte of program address Addresses are 3 byte values with a range of 00000h-FFFFFh		
[Data Bytes]		These are the data bytes to be programmed at the address specified above. They must be the same number of bytes as specified above.		
[Checksum]		This checksum is generated by exclusive ORing together all of the Data Bytes (do not include the Length or Address bytes in that calculation).		
	\nOK\r\n \nERROR\r\n	If bytes are programmed and verified. If verify fails or checksum is bad. Retry the block 3 times on an ERROR.		
		More of the above sequence until all the data bytes have been sent to the modem.		
ATFLEND\r		This ends programming and restarts the modem.		

#### **Other Supported Boot Code Commands**

2.1	ATI0 -	returns 000 or 247 for ISDN	
2.2	ATI1 -	returns boot code version number MM.mmn where	
		MM = unique code for each different platform that has boot code	
		mm = version number of boot code	
		n = version letter of the boot code	
		Examples: 2.05e, 2.12d, 35.15	
	ATI4-	Boot code date and time.	

#### **Other Programming Concerns**

- 1. The packets sent to the modem must be presorted by address and aligned on 128 byte boundaries (i.e., each packet must start on an address that is a multiple of 128).
- 2. The packets should also be a minimum of 128 bytes with the non-programmed bytes set to the hex value of FF.
- 3. The packets sent to the modem must not span a 4K boundary (i.e., start the packet before it and go over the boundary in the middle of the packet).
- 4. The 10-millisecond delay between M's at the beginning of the handshake is so that the modem can sync up to the start bit. If the M's are sent one right after another, a data bit might be mistaken as a start bit.
- Multi-Tech firmware files are in Intel Hex Format and must be read in and formatted into 128-4096 byte blocks before being sent to the modem.

#### Information about the Intel Hex Format

An Intel Format Hex File is a text file consisting of "records", one per line, that start with a ":" character and include only digits 0-9 and letters A-F. There are three different record types: Extended Address Records, Data Records, and End of File Records.

Data records contain the actual data that is to be programmed into a device. The address contained in the data record needs to be combined with an extended address (by adding the extended address shifted four bits left to the data record address) to determine the actual programming address for the data. If no extended address record is before a given data record in the file, then the extended address value is assumed to be zero.

#### Data Record

Char Pos	Field Type	Value	Description	
1	Record Start	u."	•	
2-3	Data Byte Count "NN"		Maximum value is FF (which is 255 data bytes). Typical is 20h which causes the hex record to fit in 80 columns.	
4-7	Address	"XXXX"	Lower 16 bits of 20 bit address, most significant byte first. This must be added to Extended Address left shifted four bits.	
8-9	Record Type	"00"	Data Record	
10+N	Data Bytes	"YYYY	The data bytes in hex. Each byte is two characters.	
NN+1,2	Checksum	"ZZ"	Zero minus the two's complement addition of all data hex values.	
NN+3,4	End of Line	"\r\n"	Carriage Return followed by a Line Feed	
Example Data Record in Intel Format :2000A0005BB66DDBB66CD8B060C183060D1B366DDBB66DDBB76FDFBF7EFDFBF6EDDBB66DD4				

#### **Extended Address Record**

Char	Field Type	Value	Description		
Pos					
1	Record Start	"."			
2-3	Data Byte Count	"02"	Always 2 bytes for this record type		
4-7	Address	"0000"	Not used for this record type (must be zero)		
8-9	Record Type	"02"	Extended Address Record		
10-13	Extended Address	"EEEE"	Top 16 bits of 20 bit address, most significant byte first		
14-15	Checksum	"ZZ"	Zero minus the two's complement addition of all data hex values		
16-17	End of Line	"\r\n"	Carriage Return followed by a Line Feed		
Example	Example Extended Address Record in Intel Format :020000021000EC				

#### **End of File Record**

Char Pos	Field Type	Value	Description		
1	Record Start	"."			
2-3	Data Byte Count	"00"	Always 2 bytes for this record type		
4-7	Address	"0000"	Transfer Address (usually be zero)		
8-9	Record Type	"01"	End of File Record		
10-11	Checksum	"ZZ"	Zero minus the two's complement addition of all data hex values		
12-13	End of Line	"\r\n"	Carriage Return followed by a Line Feed		
Exampl	Example End of File in Intel Format :00000001FF				

#### Wireless Information

#### Antenna System for Wireless Devices

The antenna system for use with Multi-Tech modems built into your products must include a coax cable to interface between UFL or MMCX connection on the modem and the antenna itself.

#### RF Specifications

#### **GSM/EGSM RF Specifications**

	GSM 850	EGSM 900	GSM 1800	GSM 1900
Frequency RX	869 to 894 MHz	925 to 960 MHz	1805 to 1880 MHz	1930 to 1990 MHz
Frequency TX	824 to 849 MHz	880 to 915 MHz	1710 to 1785 MHz	1850 to 1910 MHz
RF Power Stand	2W at 12.5% duty cycle	2W at 12.5% duty cycle	1W at 12.5% duty cycle	1W at 12.5% duty cycle

#### **CDMA RF Specifications**

	CDMA 800	CDMA 1900
Frequency RX	869 to 894 MHz	1930 to 1990 MHz
Frequency TX	824 to 849 MHz	1850 to 1910 MHz

#### The Antenna

#### **GSM Antenna Requirements/Specifications**

Frequency Range	824 – 960 MHz / 1710 – 1990 MHz
Impedance	50 Ohms
VSWR	VSWR shall not exceed 2.0:1 at any point across the bands of operation
Typical Radiated Gain	0 dBi on azimuth plane
Radiation	Omni-directional
Polarization	Vertical
Wave	Half Wave Dipole
Cable Loss	The cable loss shall be such that the total radiate power (TRP) at the antenna shall be no less than +22/24.5 dBm for 850/1900 MHz respectively, and the total isotropic sensitivity (TIS) at the antenna shall be no less than -99/101.5 dBm for 850/1900 MHz respectively.

#### GPS (Global Positioning) Antenna Requirements/Specifications

Frequency	1575MHz
Impedance	50 Ohms
VSWR	2.0db
Input voltage	3.0V +/- 0.3V
Connection	SMA

#### Antennas Available from Multi-Tech

Quad Band Description	Qty	Part Number
Hinged Right Angle 800/900/1800/1900 MHz Cellular Modem Antenna	1	ANQB-1HRA
Hinged Right Angle 800/900/1800/1900 MHz Cellular Modem Antenna	10	ANQB-10HRA
Hinged Right Angle 800/900/1800/1900 MHz Cellular Modem Antenna	50	ANQB-50HRA
<b>Dual Band Description</b>	Qty	Part Number
Hinged Right Angle 900/1800 MHz Cellular Modem Antenna	1	ANF1-1HRA
Hinged Right Angle 900/1800 MHz Cellular Modem Antenna	10	ANF1-10HRA
Hinged Right Angle 900/1800 MHz Cellular Modem Antenna	50	ANF1-50HRA
Hinged Right Angle 800/1900 MHz Cellular Modem Antenna	1	ANCF2-1HRA
Hinged Right Angle 800/1900 MHz Cellular Modem Antenna	10	ANCF2-10HRA
Hinged Right Angle 800/1900 MHz Cellular Modem Antenna	50	ANCF2-50HRA
Bluetooth and Wi-Fi	Qty	Part Number
Hinged 2.4 MHz Bluetooth / Wi-Fi Antenna	1	ANBT-1
Hinged 2.4 MHz Bluetooth / Wi-Fi Antenna	10	ANBT-10

#### Coax Cables

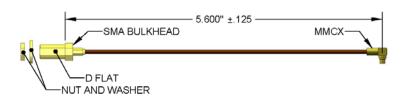
#### MMCX-to-SMA and MMCX to RSMA Coax Cable

Comment [DAR20]: Adapter\_Amph

This cable shown below is included in the Developer Kit for the CDMA, EDGE SocketModems, and the SocketWireless Bluetooth.

#### Cable Specifications

Cable Type:	Coax Cable		
Attenuation:	<1.0db		
Connector Impedance:	50 Ohms		



An optional antenna cable (SMA to MMCX) can be ordered from Multi-Tech Systems, Inc.

**Part Number** Description

CASMA-MMCX-1 SMA to MMCX COAX RF 6 inch cable (Single Pack) CASMA-MMCX-10 SMA to MMCX COAX RF 6 inch cable (Ten Pack)

#### MMCX-to-SMA Adapter

An antenna with an SMA connector may be directly connected to a SocketModem GPRS/CDMA through a mating MMCX-to-SMA adapter.

#### SMA-to-MMCX Connector Available from Amphenol

http://www.amphenol.com/ Order No: 908-31100



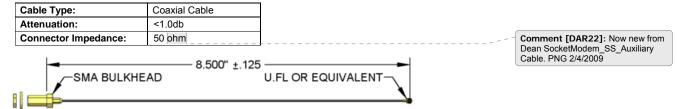
Comment [DAR21]: Now new from

(was Wireless Antenna Cable from Ken 20903C\_cable only.jpg Wireless Antenna Cable from Ken\_20903c\_generic.FH9f Wireless Antenna Cable from Ken\_20903c\_generic.pdf)

#### UFL-to-SMA and UFL-to-RSMA Coax Cable

The UFL-to-SMA cable is included in the Developer Kit for the GPS (Global Positioning), GPRS and HSDPA SocketModems

#### **Cable Specifications**



An optional antenna cables can be ordered from Multi-Tech Systems, Inc.

Part NumberDescriptionCASMA8-UFL-1SMA to UFL COAX RF 8 inch cable (Single Pack)CASMA8-UFL-10SMA to UFL COAX RF 8 inch cable (Ten Pack)CARSMA8-UFL-1RSMA to UFL COAX RF 8 inch cable (Single Pack)CARSMA8-UFL-10RSMA to UFL COAX RF 8 inch cable (Ten Pack)

#### PTCRB Requirements for the Antenna

There cannot be any alteration to the authorized antenna system. The antenna system must be the same type with similar in-band and out-of-band radiation patterns and maintain the same specifications.

#### FCC Requirements for the Antenna

The antenna gain, including cable loss, must not exceed 3.0 dBi at 1900 MHz / 1.6 dBi at 850 MHz for mobile operating and fixed mounted operations, as defined in 2.1091 and 1.1307 of the rules for satisfying RF exposure compliance.

## Account Activation for Wireless Devices

#### Pre-Configured Multi-Tech Products

Some Multi-Tech wireless modems have been pre-configured to operate on a specific wireless network, such as Sprint and Verizon.

However, before you can begin to use the modem, you must set up a wireless data account with your wireless network provider. Then, follow the activation procedures covered on the Activation Notices available from Multi-Tech.

# Wireless Approvals and Labeling Requirements

#### Approvals and Certification

The Multi-Tech SocketModem is Industry and/or Carrier Approved as an End Product modem. In most cases, when integrated and used with an antenna system that was part of the Multi-Tech modem certification, no additional approvals or certifications are required (however, CDMA has a few exceptions) for the device you develop as long as the following are met:

#### PTCRB Requirements:

The antenna system cannot be altered.

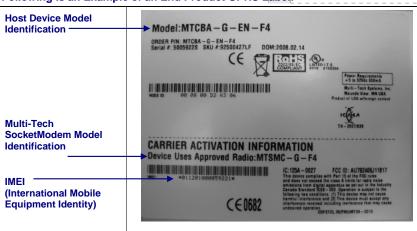
#### Model Identification:

#### IMPORTANT

When the wireless carrier asks you to provide the modem's model identification, give the Multi-Tech wireless model identification, not the identification of the host device model. See the label example below.

The Multi-Tech model identification allows the carrier to verify the modem as one of its approved models. This information is located on the modem's label.

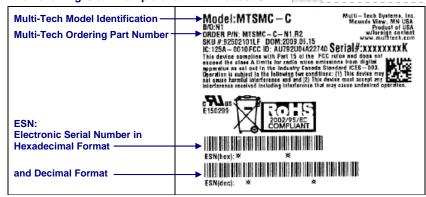
#### The Following Is an Example of an End Product GPRS Label:



Comment [DAR23]: Now Label F4.png saved in Graphics new in Rev K 62kb

#### The Following Is an Example of an End Product CDMA Label:

Comment [DAR24]: Label Small-C.png 23KB 6/16/09



#### Other Information the Wireless Carrier Asks You to Provide:

**For CDMA** SocketModems: The modem's 8-character ESN (Electronic Serial Number) number printed next to the barcode on the modem. The ESN may vary in format by various CDMA carriers; some use a decimal number while others use a hexadecimal number.

For GSM SocketModems: The modem's 15-character IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity) number printed on the modem's label.

# Analog Information

#### Recommended Parts for Analog SocketModems

**Disclaimer:** Multi-Tech Systems makes no warranty claims for vendor product recommendations listed below. Other vendor products may or may not operate satisfactorily. Multi-Tech System's recommended vendor products only indicate that the product has been tested in controlled conditions and were found to perform satisfactorily.

Surface mount ferrites are used on T&R (Tip and Ring) to mitigate emission levels out the RJ-11 cable. 220pF capacitors are also used on T&R to reduce the common mode emissions that may be present in certain systems. See the Tip and Ring drawings in each analog SocketModem chapter.

The ferrite and capacitors also aid in reducing the effects of transients that may be present on the line.

Note: These parts are RoHS compliant.

#### Recommended Ferrite (SMT)

Manufacturer – Associated Component Technology (ACT) Part # CBZ1206-202-30-LF Manufacturer – Murata Erie Part # BLM31AJ601SN1L

#### Recommended Ferrite (Thru-Hole)

Manufacturer - Associated Component Technology (ACT) Part # WB2-2.OT

#### **Recommended Capacitor (SMT)**

Manufacturer – NOVACAP Part # ES2211N221K502NXT Manufacturer – Murata Erie Part # GA355DR7GC221KY02L

#### Recommended Capacitor (Thru-Hole)

Manufacturer – Ever Grace Electronic Industrials

Manufacturer – Murata Erie

Part # YP221K2EA7PS-8.0

Part # DE2B3KH221KA3B

Note: Capacitors used on T&R must have the Y2 safety rating.

#### **Recommended RJ-11 Connector**

Manufacturer – Full Rise Electronic Co. Part # E5964-00P045

#### **Recommended Sidactor**

Manufacturer – RayChem / Tyco Electronics Part # TVB400MSC-L Manufacturer – ST Microelectronics Part# SMPMC-400

#### Recommended Poly Switch Thermal Fuse (SMT)

Manufacturer – RayChem / Tyco Electronics Part # TS600-170F

#### Recommended Poly Switch Thermal Fuse (Thru-Hole)

Manufacturer – RayChem (Tyco Electronics) Part# TRF600-150

**Note:** The Fuse & Sidactor are required in order to comply with UL60950 for protection against over-voltages from power line cross. Fuse can be reset type.

#### **Common Mode Choke**

Manufacturer – TDK Part # ZJYS51R5-2PT-01

#### Recommended Transceiver

Manufacturer – Analog Devices Part # ADM207EARZ

#### **SIP Connector**

Manufacturer – Neltron Industrial Co. (<a href="http://www.neltron.com.tw/">http://www.neltron.com.tw/</a>) Part #2209S-xxSG 4-Pin 2.0mm SIP Socket (2 Each) 10-Pin 2.0mm SIP Socket (2 Each)

#### Telecom

The RJ-11 connector must meet FCC Part 68 requirements. Refer to FCC Part 68 section 68.500 subpart F for connector specifications. A self-healing fuse is used in series with line to help prevent damage to the DAA circuit. This fuse is required in order to meet compliance regulations.

Note: See Application Notes at the end of each SocketModem chapter.

# Analog Labeling Requirements

#### United States Labeling Requirements (for Dial-Up Modems)

Telecom does not apply to all products. For example, this is not applicable for the SocketModem GPRS and CDMA products.

Approved terminal equipment and approved protective circuitry shall prominently display the following information using the format shown below:

- Responsible party
- · Product Identification
- Equipment Code
- Ringer Equivalence
- Ringer Type
- Indication that the product meets the requirements of FCC Part 68

The information required by the first five items shall correspond to the records in the ACTA (America's Carriers Telecommunications Association) database of approved equipment. The required information shall be encoded in the following format:

#### US: AAAEQ##TXXX

#### Where:

US: Is a fixed field that indicates the equipment meets all requirements of 47 CFR Part 68, including the requirements published by ACTA (America's Carriers Telecommunications Association).

AAA is the responsible party's Grantee Code obtained previously from the FCC's Common Carrier Bureau or currently from ACTA.

EQ Is an Equipment Code indicating to the Service Provider any special signal handling or billing requirements. The Equipment codes are listed in Annex A (normative).

## is the Ringer Equivalence Number without a decimal point (e.g. REN of 1.0 = 10, REN of 0.3 = 03). In the case of a "Z" ringer, ZZ shall appear. In the case of approved equipment without a network interface and equipment not connecting to circuits with analog ringing supplied then "NA" shall appear.

T is the ringer type letter associated with the Ringer Equivalence Number, in accordance with the technical requirements. In the case of approved equipment without a network interface and equipment not connecting to circuits with analog ringing supplied, the letter "N" shall appear.

XXX Is a product identifier, unique when combined with the responsible party's Grantee Code, of at least one and up to nine alphanumeric characters (including one or more dashes (-) if desired. A dash shall not appear as the first or last character nor shall the identifier consist entirely of dashes). The responsible party shall define this identifier

#### Label Physical Characteristics

The information required above shall be permanently affixed and legible without magnification. It may be etched, engraved, stamped, indelibly printed, or otherwise permanently marked. Alternatively, the required information may be permanently marked on a nameplate of metal, plastic or other material fastened to the enclosure by welding, riveting or with a permanent adhesive. Such a nameplate shall be able to last for the expected lifetime of the equipment and shall not be readily detachable.

#### Labeling Continuity and Changes

The labeling content and format requirements in effect when a product was approved shall be effective for the life of the product. The labeling content and format requirements in effect at approval shall also continue to be effective for modified products. However, the responsible party shall have the option of conforming a product's labeling to current content and format requirements at any time.

#### Other Label Requirements

The label shall be placed in one of the following locations in a location where it can be found after installation:

- on an outside surface
- inside a readily available access door or panel
- on another readily accessible surface

For example, the label should not be placed on the rear of a permanently wall-mounted device in a manner such that it is not readily accessible.

#### Canadian Labeling Requirements (for Dial-Up Modems)

The following requirements are established under section 69.3 of the *Telecommunications Act* for purposes of section 5 of the *Telecommunications Apparatus Regulations*.

Registered equipment shall bear the following identifying marks, and the Declaring Party shall ensure that these marks are permanently affixed to the equipment:

- (a) The registration number Specifications of this mark are given in the document: Self-Marking of the Certification/Registration Number on Terminal Equipment Application Procedure and Agreement; and
- (b) The model identification number under which the product was registered.

A statement of compliance with Industry Canada requirements, such as the one given below, shall accompany each unit of equipment whether registered under this procedure or previously certified:

#### "This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications"

For terminal equipment intended for connection to loop-start or ground-start interfaces, the Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) must be calculated as per Section 1.8 of CS-03, Part I. A REN higher than that determined may be assigned by manufacturers to allow for production variations. The REN must be marked on the terminal equipment itself or added to the note below. A note similar to the following shall accompany each unit of equipment whether registered under this procedure or previously certified:

"The Ringer Equivalence Number is an indication of the maximum number of devices allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination on an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five".

Pursuant to section 69.3 of the *Telecommunications Act*, certified or self-declared TE will bear a valid identifying certification number or registration number. The marking of the certification or registration number on the product shall be as follows:

- (a) TAC holder/DP will be responsible for permanently affixing the certification/registration number on the TE. The certification/registration number (see example below) identifies Certified or self-declared TE to the public, representatives of the telecommunications common carriers, the Department, and other interested parties. The letter height must be no less than 1.5 mm and the letters must be legible without magnification.
- (b) For integrated devices, e.g. a modem or one that is intended to become a sub-assembly of host equipment e.g. a data terminal, computer etc. that are designed to interface directly with the network, the certification/registration number shall be affixed to the integrated device itself.
- (c) The certification/registration number for a packaged TE will denote that the total package has been registered. However, the marking will normally be placed on that unit of the package which connects to the network; e.g., in a PBX the marking will be placed on the common equipment which connects to the network, rather than on plug-in components which may be added later. The Terminal Equipment List will show the common equipment but not the standard station apparatus or any proprietary station apparatus.
- (d) The marking format of the certification/registration number is as follows: IC: XXXXXX-YYYYYYYYY

#### Mhara:

- The letters "IC" have no other meaning or purpose than to identify the Industry Canada certification/registration number, and
- "XXXXXX-YYYYYYYY" is the certification/registration number; "XXXXXX" is the Company Number¹ (CN); it consists of up to six alphanumeric characters (A-Z, 0-9) assigned by Industry Canada; and "YYYYYYYY" is the Unique Product Number (UPN); it consists of up to eight alphanumeric characters (A-Z, 0-9) assigned by the applicant. Other characters, (such as & # \*-) may not be used. Alphabetic characters must be capitalized.
- <sup>1</sup> Note: The Company Number of registered equipment ends with an alphabetic character.
- (e) Certification Numbers granted prior to the implementation of the above marking format are grandfathered.
  - (i) For previously certified TE, the self-marking format shall consist of the old certification number preceded by "IC:" For example, if the certification number is "123 1234 A", then the self-mark would read "IC: 123 1234 A".
  - (ii) For a new model that is registered to a family of previously certified TE, the self-marking format shall be: IC: XXXXXX-ZZZZZZZZ

#### Where:

- "XXXXXX" is the Company Number, as in (d) above; and
- "ZZZZZZZZ" is either the old certification number minus the old company number, or a new Unique Product Number assigned by the applicant. For example, if a new model is registered to the family of products with certification number "123 1234 A", and that the Company Number for the registration is "123A", then the self-mark for this new model would read "IC: 123A-1234 A". If the applicant decides to replace "1234 A" with a new UPN, say "5678", then the self-mark would read "IC: 123A-5678".

# Label Examples for Analog SocketModems

Complies with IOA Stendards DB - 00625

Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações 0862 - 09 - 2742

MT1-MT92348MI

Note: These do not apply to the Wireless GPRS and CDMA products.

Serial Label DOM: 2009.06.15 B/O: — 92 Order Pin: MT9234SM1 - 12 - Sp This label shows the Serial #:xxxxxxxx Serial #:xxxxxxxx MATEL:0882-09-2742 Complies with 47 CFR Part68 US:AU7MM01BMT5234SMI modem model (M/N), build option (B/O), date of manufacture (DOM), serial number, and North America and European Union regulatory information. Regulatory Label for Internal Modem: MT9234SMI This is an example of Date of manufacture(DOM) is printed on internal Modem. ORDER P/N: MT9234SMI GLOBAL REG. LABEL Regulatory Label MultiTech O which is available from OHIDER PIN: M192345RII GLIDBAL REG. DI SKUH 20043710L Compiles with 47 GFR Pari88 For Morea or COFETEL\*TIDMUMT06-085 IC:125A - 0021 Chile:SUBTEL 3778 Multi-Tech by request. Russia:Д-ТФ-0136 TIE: MT9234SMI 型号: MT9234SMI 摩迪泰克系統有限公司 [美国制造] 美国明尼苏达州港兹维允市 TELEPERMIT

This Mulls—Tesb

MISSASSMI poster

In Approved for Connection

PTC 211/05/043 RN = 0.5

(13)

CCABOSM 10030T7 伍戴尔路2205号, 郝政编码55112 (((Gs בסבל האשרון - יומי מרפקלור (פירותי רבש רמליטיסיקה) בסבל האשרון - יומי מרפקלור (פירותי רבש רמליטיסיקה) בסבלור בסבל

Comment [DAR25]: Label Small MT9234SMI.png 6/16/09 Label 9234SMI Scan0549\_000.png 6/16/09

Comment [DAR26]: Label 9234SMI Scan 0549\_000.png 55KB 6/15/09

#### Safety Notices and Warnings

Note to OEMs: The following safety statements may be used in the documentation of your final product applications.

#### Wireless Safety

#### **General Safety**

The modem is designed for and intended to be used in fixed and mobile applications. "Fixed" means that the device is physically secured at one location and is not able to be easily moved to another location. "Mobile" means that the device is designed to be used in other than fixed locations.

#### RF Safety

The remote modems are wireless cellular telephones devices. It is important to follow any special regulations regarding the use of radio equipment due in particular to the possibility of Radio Frequency (RF) interference.

**Caution:** A separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between the modem transmitter's antenna and the body of the user or nearby persons. The modem is not designed for or intended to be used in portable applications within 20 cm of the body of the user. In particular, if using a Yagi antenna, it must be in a location that prevents public exposure to the radiation limits being exceeded. Check your local standards regarding safe distances, etc.

- Wireless modems in an ATM in, for example, a hospital environment and any other place where medical
  equipment may be in use, may be a hazard. This statement also applies to inadequately protected
  personal medical devices such as hearing aids and pacemakers.
- Operation of a wireless modem close to other electronic equipment may also cause interference if the
  equipment is inadequately protected. Observe any warning signs and manufacturers' recommendations.
- The modems must not be operated around gasoline or diesel-fuel.

#### RF Interference Safety

It is important to follow any special regulations regarding the use of radio equipment due in particular to the possibility of radio frequency, RF, interference. Please follow the safety advice given below carefully.

- Switch OFF your Wireless MultiModem when in an aircraft. The use of cellular telephones in an aircraft
  may endanger the operation of the aircraft, disrupt the cellular network and is illegal. Failure to observe
  this instruction may lead to suspension or denial of cellular telephone services to the offender, or legal
  action or both.
- Switch OFF your Wireless MultiModem when around gasoline or diesel-fuel pumps and before filling your vehicle with fuel.
- Switch OFF your wireless device in hospitals and any other place where medical equipment may be in use.
- Respect restrictions on the use of radio equipment in fuel depots, chemical plants or where blasting
  operations are in progress.
- There may be a hazard associated with the operation of your wireless device close to inadequately
  protected personal medical devices such as hearing aids and pacemakers. Consult the manufacturers of
  the medical device to determine if it is adequately protected.
- Operation of your wireless device close to other electronic equipment may also cause interference if the
  equipment is inadequately protected. Observe any warning signs and manufacturers' recommendations.

#### Vehicle Safety

- · Do not use your wireless device while driving.
- Respect national regulations on the use of cellular telephones in vehicles. Road safety always comes first.
- If incorrectly installed in a vehicle, the operation of a wireless telephone could interfere with the correct functioning of vehicle electronics. To avoid such problems, be sure that qualified personnel have performed the installation. Verification of the protection of vehicle electronics should be part of the installation.
- The use of an alert device to operate a vehicle's lights or horn on public roads is not permitted.

#### Maintenance of Your Wireless Device

Your wireless device is the product of advanced engineering, design, and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you to enjoy this product for many years.

- Do not expose the wireless device to any extreme environment where the temperature is above 50°C or humidity is above 90% noncondensing.
- Do not attempt to disassemble the wireless device. There are no user serviceable parts inside.
- Do not expose the wireless device to water, rain, or spilled beverages. It is not waterproof.
- Do not place the wireless device alongside computer discs, credit or travel cards, or other magnetic media. The phone may affect the information contained on discs or cards.
- The use of accessories not authorized by Multi-Tech or not compliant with Multi-Tech's accessory specifications may invalidate the warranty of the wireless device.
- In the unlikely event of a fault in the wireless device, contact Multi-Tech Tech Support.

#### Your Responsibility

This wireless device is your responsibility. Please treat it with care respecting all local regulations. It is not a toy. Therefore, keep it in a safe place at all times and out of the reach of children.

Try to remember your Unlock and PIN codes. Become familiar with and use the security features to block unauthorized use and theft.

# Analog Telecom Safety Warnings

- 1. Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
- 2. Never install a telephone jack in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
- 3. This product is to be used with UL and cUL listed computers.
- 4. Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
- 5. Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines.
- Avoid using a telephone during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electrical shock from lightning.
- 7. Do not use a telephone in the vicinity of a gas leak.
- 8. To reduce the risk of fire, use only 26 AWG or larger telecommunication line cord.
- 9. This product must be disconnected from its power source and telephone network interface when servicing.

# Telecom Approvals for Analog Modems

Multi-Tech's Analog Global\* SocketModems are designed and approved for connection to the public switched telephone network in more than 50 countries or regions worldwide. Multi-Tech's SocketModems have been approved as host independent, which means our certification efforts can be transferred directly to your end product with proper labeling on the OEM equipment. Multi-Tech supports our approvals by supplying our customers with supporting documentation and offering a compliance label with country or regional approval logos and approval numbers to be attached to an end product.

The following is a list of countries or regions that Multi-Tech completes testing and obtains\*\* certification test reports or certificates at or near the initial release of the product. After the initial release, the product may be tested and certified for other countries or regions. Check the Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. Web site at

http://www.multitech.com/products/info/approvals/smi.asp or contact Multi-Tech at oemsales@multitech.com to obtain a current list of approvals for the SocketModem.

Countries or Regions						
Argentina	France	Liechtenstein	Singapore			
Australia	Germany	Lithuania	Slovakia Republic			
Austria	Greece	Luxembourg	Slovenia			
Belgium	Hong Kong, S.A.R. of China	Malta	South Africa			
Bulgaria	Hungary	Mexico	Spain			
Canada	Iceland	Netherlands	Sweden			
Chile	Indonesia	New Zealand	Switzerland			
China	Ireland	Norway	Taiwan			
Cyprus	Israel	Philippines	Thailand			
Czech Republic	Italy	Poland	Turkey			
Denmark	Japan	Portugal	United Kingdom			
Estonia	Korea	Romania	United States			
Finland	Latvia	Russia				

The above list is our target set of countries or regions in which the global\* SocketModems are approved. Many of the approvals are completed at the time the product is released to market; whereas, others may take additional months to complete the approval.

- \* Refer to each chapter for Product Ordering Information identifying the modem as Global or Regional.
- \*\* Some countries or regions have special import requirements that require us to facilitate additional paperwork application in partner with our customers. Contact Technical Support or Multi-Tech at <a href="mailto:oemsales@multitech.com">oemsales@multitech.com</a> for more information.

#### Note:

Setting Country/Regional Codes – Country or Regional Codes are usually set through AT Commands.

See each product's AT Command guide.

#### Regulatory Compliance Statements

# Country/Region-Specific Statements

# CE

#### EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance

The CE mark is affixed to this product to confirm compliance with the following European Community Directives: Council Directive 2004/108/EC of 15 December 2004 on the approximation of the laws of Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility;

and

Council Directive 2006/95/EC of 12 December 2006 on the harmonization of the laws of Member States relating to electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits;

and

Council Directive 1999/5/EC of 9 March 1999 on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity.

#### International Modem Restrictions

Some dialing and answering defaults and restrictions may vary for international modems. Changing settings may cause a modem to become non-compliant with national telecom requirements in specific countries. Also note that some software packages may have features or lack restrictions that may cause the modem to become non-compliant.

# **EMC Requirements for the United States**

#### 47 CFR - FCC Part 15 Regulation

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a **Class B** digital device, pursuant to 47 CFR – FCC Part 15 regulations. The stated limits in this regulation are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Plug the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with 47 CFR – FCC Part 15 rules. Operation of this device is subject to the following conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation.

Warning: Changes or modifications to this unit not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### EMC Requirements for Industry Canada

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Reglement Canadien sur le matériel brouilleur.

#### 47 CFR Part 68 Telecom

 This equipment complies with Part 68 of the 47 CFR rules and the requirements adopted by the ACTA. Located on this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, the registration number and ringer equivalence number (REN) for this equipment or a product identifier in the format:

For current products is US:AAAEQ##Txxxx.

For legacy products is AU7USA-xxxxx-xx-x.

If requested, this number must be provided to the telephone company.

- A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable 47 CFR Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. It's designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant.
- 3. The ringer equivalence number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##Txxxx. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (e.g., 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is separately shown on the label.
- 4. If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. But if advance notice isn't practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. Also, you will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC if you believe it is necessary.
- 5. The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of the equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.
- If trouble is experienced with this equipment, please contact Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. at the address shown below for details of how to have the repairs made. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.
- Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission or corporation commission for information.
- No repairs are to be made by you. Repairs are to be made only by Multi-Tech Systems or its licensees. Unauthorized repairs void registration and warranty.
- If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the
  installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment.
   If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a
  qualified installer.
- Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission or corporation commission for information.
- 11. This equipment is hearing aid compatible.
- 12. Manufacturing Information on telecommunications device (modem):

Manufacturer: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc.

Trade Name: Socket Modem SocketModem SocketModem Model Number: MT9234SMI MT5692SMI MT2492SMI

Registration No: US:AU7MM01BMT9234SMI US:AU7MM01BMT5692SMI US:AU7MM01B2492SMI

Ringer Equivalence: 0.1B

Modular Jack (USOC): RJ11C or RJ11W (single line)
Service Center in USA: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc.
2205 Woodale Drive

Mounds View, MN 55112 U.S.A.

(763) 785-3500 (763) 785-9874 Fax

#### New Zealand Telecom Warning Notice

- 1. The grant of a Telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of Telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services. This equipment is not capable under all operating conditions of correct operating conditions of correct operation at the higher speed which it is designated. 33.6 kbps and 56 kbps connections are likely to be restricted to lower bit rates when connected to some PSTN implementations. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances.
- Immediately disconnect this equipment should it become physically damaged, and arrange for its disposal or repair
- This modem shall not be used in any manner which could constitute a nuisance to other Telecom customers.
- 4. This device is equipped with pulse dialing, while the Telecom standard is DTMF tone dialing. There is no guarantee that Telecom lines will always continue to support pulse dialing. Use of pulse dialing, when this equipment is connected to the same line as other equipment, may give rise to 'bell tinkle' or noise and may also cause a false answer condition. Should such problems occur, the user should NOT contact the Telecom Faults Service.
  The preferred method of dialing is to use DTMF tones, as this is faster than pulse (decadic) dialing and is
- readily available on almost all New Zealand telephone exchanges.

  Marning Notice: No '111' or other calls can be made from this device during a mains power failure.
- This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line
- 7. Some parameters required for compliance with Telecom's Telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment (PC) associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance with Telecom's Specifications:
  For repeat calls to the same number:
  - There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
  - The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one
    attempt and the beginning of the next attempt.

For automatic calls to different numbers:

- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is no less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.
- For correct operation, total of the RN's of all devices connected to a single line at any time should not exceed 5

#### South African Statement

This modem must be used in conjunction with an approved surge protection device.

#### Thailand Approval for MT9234SMI and the MT5692SMI

This telecom device conforms to NTC\* requirements.

\*NTC is the National Telecommunications Commission, Thailand's telecommunications regulator.

"เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช."

# Brazil Approval for the MT9234SMI and MT5656SMI

This product has been homologated by ANATEL. This product meets the applied technical requirements in accordance with the procedures regulated by ANATEL. Reference of homologation of this product can be viewed in ANATEL web page: <a href="http://www.anatel.gov.br">http://www.anatel.gov.br</a>



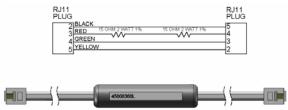


Brazil Bar Code for MT5656SMI

#### **Brazil Certification (MT9234SMI Model Only)**

A special phone cable is required for regulatory compliance.

Um cabo especial para telefone é requerido para a conformidade regulatória.



#### Japan Requirements

These devices conform to (JATE) Japan Approval Institute for Telecommunications Equipment:

MT5692SMI - JATE Approval A09-0123001

MT9234SMI - JATE Approval AD06-0220001

Important Note: SocketModems are approved for product development in Japan only if they are removable from the manufactured product. The SocketModem must not be soldered into place.



Japan requires that your manufactured product documentation include SocketModem installation and removal instructions as well as connection to the PSTN network. The following text provides general steps to follow.

#### Installation of the SocketModem from Your Manufactured Product

- If applicable, disconnect any power cord and peripherals you may have attached to your manufactured product.
- 2. Place the SocketModem on the board of your product. Be sure to match the pins on the SocketModem with the correct orientation on your board.
- Be sure that the SocketModem is securely fastened to board so that it cannot come loose while handling or during shipping. Some examples of fasteners include nylon screws, tie wraps, etc. Remember that you cannot solder the SocketModem in place.
- Put the cover on your product and connect the power and peripherals.

#### Removal of the SocketModem from your Manufactured Product

- 1. Back up the current configuration of your manufactured product if you want to save it.
- 2. Record any information not stored in the configuration that you may want to reference.
- 3. Disconnect any power cord and peripherals from your manufactured product.
- 4. Remove the cover from your product.
- 5. To remove the SocketModem, gently lift the SocketModem upwards while holding the board in place.

#### Connecting to the PSTN Network

For connection to a PSTN network, see the *Tip and Ring Interface* section in each analog SocketModem chapter.

#### **Other Countries**

The above country-specific examples do not cover all countries with specific regulations; they are included to show you how each country may differ. If you have trouble determining your own country's requirements, check with Multi-Tech's Technical Support for assistance.

# Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment Statement

Note to OEMs: The statement is included for your information and may be used in the documentation of your final product applications.

#### **WEEE Directive**

The WEEE directive places an obligation on EU-based manufacturers, distributors, retailers, and importers to take-back electronics products at the end of their useful life. A sister Directive, ROHS (Restriction of Hazardous Substances) complements the WEEE Directive by banning the presence of specific hazardous substances in the products at the design phase. The WEEE Directive covers all Multi-Tech products imported into the EU as of August 13, 2005. EU-based manufacturers, distributors, retailers and importers are obliged to finance the costs of recovery from municipal collection points, reuse, and recycling of specified percentages per the WEEE requirements.

#### Instructions for Disposal of WEEE by Users in the European Union

The symbol shown below is on the product or on its packaging, which indicates that this product must not be disposed of with other waste. Instead, it is the user's responsibility to dispose of their waste equipment by handing it over to a designated collection point for the recycling of waste electrical and electronic equipment. The separate collection and recycling of your waste equipment at the time of disposal will help to conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service or where you purchased the product.

July, 2005



Comment [DAR27]: Stored in common text as png. 3KB

# Restriction of the Use of Hazardous Substances

(ROHS)

Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. Certificate of Compliance

2002/95/EC

Multi-Tech Systems Inc. confirms that its embedded products now comply with the chemical concentration limitations set forth in the directive **2002/95/EC** of the European Parliament (Restriction Of the use of certain Hazardous Substances in electrical and electronic equipment - **RoHS**)

These Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. products do not contain the following banned chemicals:

Lead, [Pb] < 1000 PPM

Mercury, [Hg] < 1000 PPM

Hexavalent Chromium, [Cr+6] < 1000 PPM

Cadmium, [Cd] < 100 PPM

Polybrominated Biphenyl, [PBB] < 1000 PPM

Polybrominated Diphenyl Ether, [PBDE] < 1000 PPM

Moisture Sensitivity Level (MSL) =1
Maximum Soldering temperature = 260C (wave only)

#### Notes:

- Lead usage in some components is exempted by the following RoHS annex; therefore, higher lead concentration would be found in some SocketModems (>1000ppm).
  - Lead in high melting temperature type solders (i.e., tin-lead solder alloys containing more than 85% lead).
  - b. Lead in electronic ceramic parts (e.g., piezoelectronic devices).
- 2. Moisture Sensitivity Level (MSL) Analysis is based on the components/material used on the board.

Comment [DAR28]: Bud said to take out the Tin Whisker growth statements 8/24/09. He had said this previously, but they somehow didn't get removed.

# Information on HS/TS Substances according to Chinese Standards in English

In accordance with China's Administrative Measures on the Control of Pollution Caused by Electronic Information Products (EIP) # 39, also known as China RoHS, the following information is provided regarding the names and concentration levels of Toxic Substances (TS) or Hazardous Substances (HS) which may be contained in Multi-Tech Systems Inc. products relative to the EIP standards set by China's Ministry of Information Industry (MII).

	Hazardous/Toxic Substance/Elements					
Name of the Component	Lead (PB)	Mercury (Hg)	Cadmium (CD)	Hexavalent Chromium (CR6+)	Polybrominated Biphenyl (PBB)	Polybrominated Diphenyl Ether (PBDE)
Printed Circuit Boards	0	0	0	0	0	0
Resistors	Х	0	0	0	0	0
Capacitors	Х	0	0	0	0	0
Ferrite Beads	0	0	0	0	0	0
Relays/Opticals	0	0	0	0	0	0
ICs	0	0	0	0	0	0
Diodes/ Transistors	0	0	0	0	0	0
Oscillators and Crystals	Х	0	0	0	0	0
Regulator	0	0	0	0	0	0
Voltage Sensor	0	0	0	0	0	0
Transformer	0	0	0	0	0	0
Speaker	0	0	0	0	0	0
Connectors	0	0	0	0	0	0
LEDs	0	0	0	0	0	0
Screws, Nuts, and other Hardware	Х	0	0	0	0	0
ac-dc Power Supplies	0	0	0	0	0	0
Software / Documentation CDs	0	0	0	0	0	0
Booklets and Paperwork	0	0	0	0	0	0
Chassis	0	0	0	0	0	0

- X Represents that the concentration of such hazardous/toxic substance in all the units of homogeneous material of such component is higher than the SJ/Txxx-2006 Requirements for Concentration Limits.
- O Represents that no such substances are used or that the concentration is within the aforementioned limits.

# Information on HS/TS Substances According to Chinese Standards in Chinese

#### 依照中国标准的有毒有害物质信息

根据中华人民共和国信息产业部 (MII) 制定的电子信息产品 (EIP) 标准一中华人民共和国《电子信息产品污染控制管理办法》(第 39 号),也称作中国 RoHS, 下表列出了 Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. 产品中可能含有的有毒物质(TS)或有害物质 (HS)的名称及含量水平方面的信息。

	有害/有毒物质/元素					
成分名称	铅 (PB)	汞 (Hg)	镉 (CD)	六价铬 (CR6+)	多溴联苯 (PBB)	多溴二苯醚 (PBDE)
印刷电路板	0	0	0	0	0	0
电阻器	Х	0	0	0	0	0
电容器	Х	0	0	0	0	0
铁氧体磁环	0	0	0	0	0	0
继电器/光学部件	0	0	0	0	0	0
IC	0	0	0	0	0	0
二极管/晶体管	0	0	0	0	0	0
振荡器和晶振	Х	0	0	0	0	0
调节器	0	0	0	0	0	0
电压传感器	0	0	0	0	0	0
变压器	0	0	0	0	0	0
扬声器	0	0	0	0	0	0
连接器	0	0	0	0	0	0
LED	0	0	0	0	0	0
螺丝、螺母以及其它 五金件	Х	0	0	0	0	0
交流-直流电源	0	0	0	0	0	0
软件/文档 CD	0	0	0	0	0	0
手册和纸页	0	0	0	0	0	0
底盘	0	0	0	0	0	0

- X 表示所有使用类似材料的设备中有害/有毒物质的含量水平高于 SJ/Txxx-2006 限量要求。
- **O** 表示不含该物质或者该物质的含量水平在上述限量要求之内。

# Part 2 Wireless Socket Modems

Chapter 2 - SocketModem Cell and iCell

Chapter 3 - SocketModem CDMA

Chapter 4 - SocketModem EDGE

Chapter 5 - SocketModem HSDPA

# Chapter 2 - SocketModem<sup>®</sup> Cell (MTSMC-G2) & SocketModem<sup>®</sup> iCell (MTSMC-G2-IP)

#### Introduction

The MTSMC-G2 is a serial to wireless quad-band GPRS SocketModem. It is a complete, ready-to-integrate SocketModem that offers standards-based multi-band GSM/GPRS Class 10 performance. It is based on industry-standard open interfaces and utilizes Multi-Tech's universal socket design. The SocketModem is available with the Multi-Tech's *Universal IP*™ stack to bring embedded Internet connectivity to any device.

#### **Notes about Activation:**

- · These units are shipped without network activation.
- To connect to the wireless network, you will have to establish a wireless account. See the Wireless Activation procedures on separate sheets included with the Developer Kit and available on the Developer Kit CD.

# Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order This Product			
MTSMC-G2	Quad-band GPRS SocketModem Cell	US Default				
MTSMC-G2-ED	Quad-band GPRS SocketModem Cell	EU Default				
MTSMC-G2-V	Quad-band GPRS SocketModem Cell with Voice	US Default				
MTSMC-G2-V-ED	Quad-band GPRS SocketModem Cell with Voice	EU Default				
MTSMC-G2-IP	Quad-band GPRS SocketModem iCell with Universal IP	US Default				
MTSMC-G2-IP-ED	Quad-band GPRS SocketModem iCell with Universal IP	EU Default				
	Developer Kit					
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Global				

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

G2 GPRS

ED European Default

V Voice (microphone and speaker)

IP Universal IP™ Stack
UDK Universal Developer Kit

#### **Other Product Codes:**

The complete product code may end in .Rx. For example, MTSMC-G2.Rx.

"R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

Note: All products can be ordered in single packs or 50-packs. Single pack product codes end in SP.

#### AT Commands Reference Guides

Products	AT Commands Reference Guide Title & Document Number	<b>Fax Commands</b>	<b>Voice Commands</b>
(MTSMC-G2 and	GPRS AT Commands for Multi-Tech G2 Wireless Modems (\$000463x)	NA	Included
	AT Commands for Multi-Tech G2 Wireless Modems with IP Connectivity (S000469x)		
SocketModem iCell (TSMC-G2-IP)	GPRS AT Commands for Multi-Tech G2 Wireless Modems (\$000463x)	NA	Included
	Universal IP Commands (S000457x)		

# Technical Specifications

The MTSMC-G2 and MTSMC-G2-IP SocketModems meet the following specifications:

Category	Description	
Standards	GPRS Class 10	
Frequency Bands	Quad-band GSM/EGPRS 850/900/1800/1900 MHz	
Serial/Data Speed	Serial interface supports DTE speeds up to 921.6K IP interface supports DTE speeds at the fixed rate of 115.2 Packet data up to 85.6K bps Circuit-switched data (GPRS) up to 14.4K bps transparent and non-transparent Supports data rates of 921600, 460800, 230400, 115200 bps	
Data Format	10 bit Serial Asynchronous	
Data Error Correction	MNP2	
Data Compression	V.42bis	
Weight	1 oz. (28 g)	
Size	3.15" x 1.375" (80.010 mm x 34.925 mm)	
Operating Temperature	-40° C to +85° C	
Storage Temperature	-40 °C to +85°C	
Humidity	10% to 90%	
Input Power	5VDC	
Operating Voltage	Supply Range: VCC Maximum: 5.5	
Voltage at Any Signal Pin	Minimum: GND Maximum: VCC	
Antenna Connector	Surface mount UFL	
SIM Holder	Standard 3V SIM holder	
IP Protocols Supported	MTSMC-G2 DNS Resolve, FTP client, LCP, PPP (dial-out),TCP socket, UDP socket, PAP & CHAP authentication MTSMC-G2-IP DNS Client, FTP Client, ICMP (Ping), POP3 Client, SMTP Client, TCP Client & Server, UDP Client & Server &	
M2M Applications	MTSMC-G2-IP Automatic connect/reconnect, device monitor, modem emulation, Ping & TCP keep alive, wake-up on caller ID, wake-up on ring	
Compliance	EMC Compliance     FCC Part 15     EN55022     EN55024     Radio Compliance     FCC Part 22     FCC Part 24     RSS 132     RSS 133     EN 301 511     EN 301 489-1     EN 301 489-7     AS/ACIF S042.1     AS/ACIF S042.3     Safety Compliance     UL 60950-1     cUL 60950-1     IEC 60950-1     AS/NZS 60950-1     Network Compliance     PTCRB	
Warranty	Two years	

Comment [DAR29]: From Dustin 6/24/09

Comment [DAR30]: From Dustin 6/24/09

Comment [DAR31]: Updated list from Dustin for Rev. K

#### **Specifications Continued:**

Category	Description
Features	Modes of Operation: Data Mode, Command Mode, and Voice Mode Embedded TCP/IP stack Short Message Services (SMS) RTS/CTS hardware flow control AT command compatible Support for HR, FR, EFR, and AMR (Adaptive Multi Rate) voice codec support Flash upgradeable Non-volatile memory

#### DC Electrical Characteristics

**Units: Volts** 

5V DC Characteristics (VDD = 5V ± 0.25V) <sub>VDDMAX</sub> = 5.25V

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Digital Signal Input Low Level -DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33)	GND	0.8
Digital Signal Input High Level -DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33)	2	Vcc
Digital Signal Output Low Level -DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)		0.4
Digital Signal Output High Level -DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	3.84	
Reset (Low Active) Input Low Level -Reset (24)		0.8
Reset (Low Active) Input High Level -Reset (24)	2	
Digital Input Capacitance		14pF

# Power Measurements

# MTSMC-G2 Measured Power\* Measures at Input Voltage 5.00

	Sleep	Typical	Maximum	Peak
Current (AMPS)	0.049	0.113	0.24	1.10
Watts	0.245	0.564	1.195	

### MTSMC-G2-IP Measured Power\* Measures at Input Voltage 5.00

	Sleep	Typical	Maximum	Peak
Current (AMPS)	0.080	0.135	0.280	1.250
Watts	0.382	0.664	1.358	

**Note:** Current Peak = 1500mA maximum during Tx burst.

#### MTSMC-G2-GP (for GPS) Measured Power\* Measures at Input Voltage 5.00

	Sleep Mode	Typical	Maximum	Peak
Current (AMPS)	0.013	0.115	0.481	1.400
Watts	0.065	0.574	2.386	

Comment [DAR32]: Measurements for MTSMC-G2-IP 73120965 Rev 0 from Tom Fix. He suggested the current peak text also 4/22/09. He said these measurements apply to G2 without IP, too.

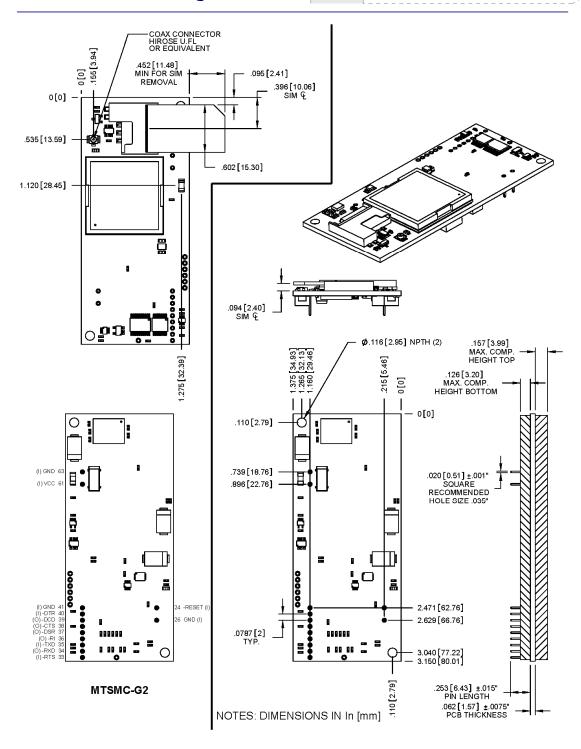
Comment [DAR33]: Measurements for MTSMC-G2-IP 73120965 Rev 0 from Tom Fix. He suggested the current peak text also 4/22/09. He said these measurements apply to G2 without IP, too.

Comment [DAR34]: Measurements for MTSMC-G2-gp from Tom Fix 10/06/09.

PART 2 – Embedded Wireless Modems Chapter 2 - SocketModem Cell and iCell \* Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.

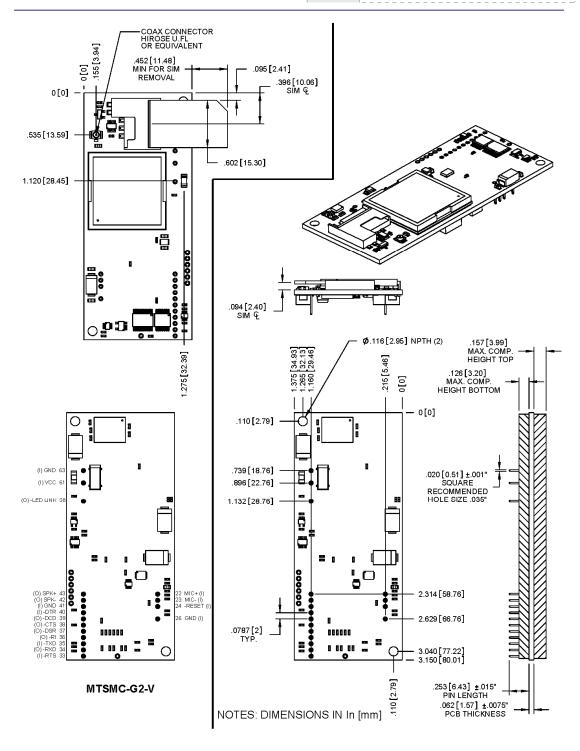
# Mechanical Drawings - Basic Build

Comment [DAR35]: Vault Data 357



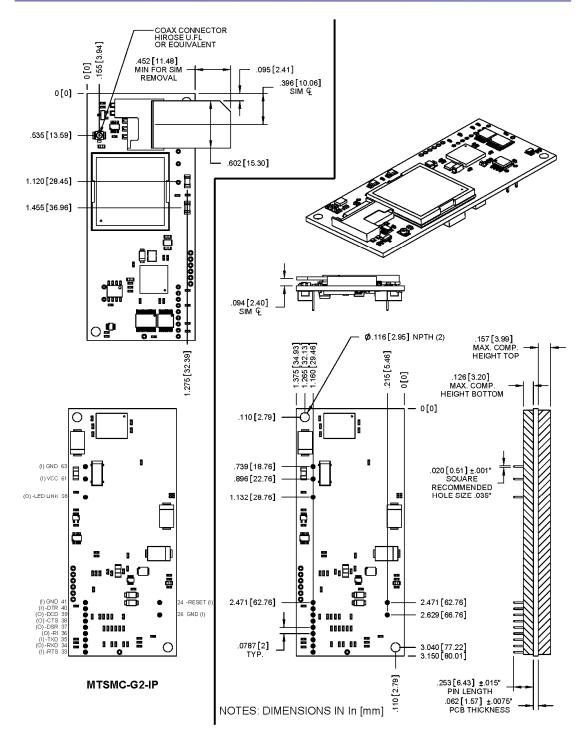
# Mechanical Drawings - Voice Build

Comment [DAR36]: Vault Data 375



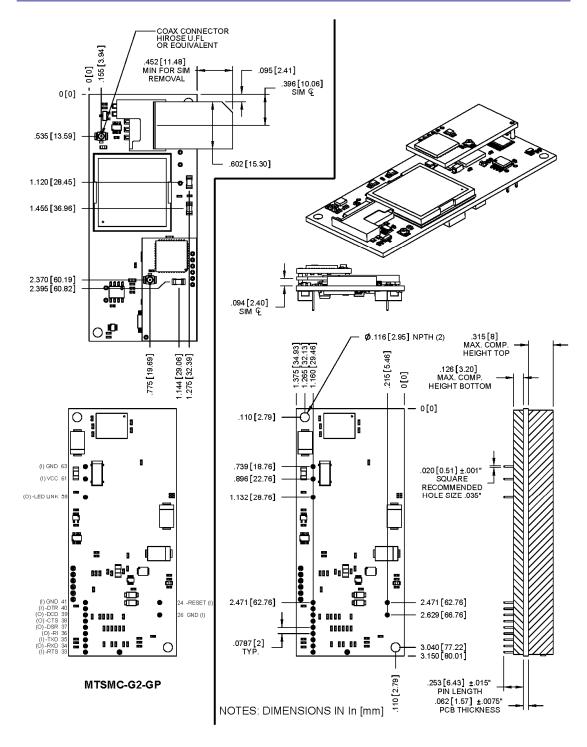
# Mechanical Drawings - IP Build

Comment [DAR37]: 8/26/09. Dean's #357 in Vault Data MTSMC-G2-IP-Manual.png



# Mechanical Drawings - GPS Build

Comment [DAR38]: 8/26/09. Dean's #357 in Vault Data MTSMC-G2-GP-Manual.png



# Application Notes

## Flashing LED Interface

The flashing LED signal is used to indicate the working mode of the SocketModem.

#### LEDs and SocketModem Status

Signal	SocketModem Status		
OFF	Download mode or switched OFF>		
ON	Continuously lit Switched ON (not registered on the network		
	Flashing	Switched ON (registered on the network)	

#### RF Performances

RF performances are compliant with the ETSI recommendation 05.05 and 11.10.

Note: The following statistics are subject to change due to pending test results.

The main parameters are:

#### Receiver Features

- EGSM Sensitivity: < -104 dBm
- GSM 1800/GSM 1900 Sensitivity : < -102 dBm
- Selectivity @ 200 kHz : > +9 dBc
- Selectivity @ 400 kHz : > +41 dBc
- Dynamic range: 62 dB
- Intermodulation : > -43 dBm
- Co-channel rejection : + 9 dBc

#### **Transmitter Features**

- Maximum output power (EGSM): 33 dBm ± 2 dB
- Maximum output power (DCS/PCS): 30 dBm ± 2 dB
- Minimum output power (EGSM): 5 dBm ± 5 dB
- Minimum output power (DCS/PCS): 0 dBm ± 5 dB
- H2 level : < -30 dBm
- H3 level : < -30 dBm
- Noise in 925 935 MHz : < -67 dBm</li>
- Noise in 935 960 MHz : < -79 dBm
- Noise in 1805 1880 MHz : < -71 dBm
- Phase error at peak power : < 5 ° RMS
- Frequency error : ± 0.1 ppm max

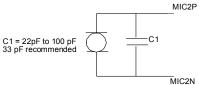
# RF Connection and Antenna

The RF connector on the SocketModem GPRS is a UFL standard type. See Chapter 1 for Antenna System details.

## Microphone Inputs

The MIC inputs are differential ones. They already include the convenient biasing for an electret microphone (0.5 mA and 2 Volts). This electret microphone can be directly connected on these inputs. The impedance of the microphone has to be around 2K. These inputs are the standard ones for a handset design.

The gain of the MIC inputs is internally adjusted. The gain can be tuned from 30dB to 51dB. The connection to the microphone is direct.



**Comment [DAR39]:** Tom Hofstedt expects text results in by June 24th.

# Changing the Quad Band

The SocketModem Cell and the SocketModem iCell both support quad band frequencies (850/1900/900/1800 MHz). In reality, these products operate like dual, dual-band devices. In other words, they can be configured for 850/1900 or 900/1800 MHz. They do not auto-seek the local area frequency.

#### **Build Options**

These wireless modems can be ordered with the default set to 850/1900 MHz or 900/1800 MHz.

- 850/1900 MHz The wireless modem defaulting to 850/1900 MHz is the default build option.
- 900/1800 MHz The wireless modem defaulting to 900/1800 MHz is identified with -ED in the product ordering number which signifies European default.

#### Changing the GSM Band

If for any reason, such as moving the modem from one geographical area to another, you want to change the band, you can accomplish this by using the **+WMBS** AT Command.

#### Steps for Changing the GSM Band

Use a terminal application such as HyperTerminal for entering the AT Command.

- To open HyperTerminal, click Start. Then select Programs > Accessories > Communications. Then click HyperTerminal.
- 2. When the command window opens, type AT+WMBS=<Band><Param>. Press Enter.
  - For <Band>, enter the option you desire:
    - 4 = Dual-band mode 850/1900MHz
    - 5 = Dual-band mode 900/1800MHz
  - For <Param>, enter the option you desire:
    - 0 = Modem must be reset in order to use the specified band(s). This is the default.
    - 1 = Modem restarts immediately using the specified band(s).

Example: AT+WMBS=4,0. Press Enter.

# Global Positioning System (GPS)

# Technical Specifications

Receiver Type L1 Frequency

GPS C/A code SBAS Capable

51 Channel Acquisitions 14 Channel Tracking

Accuracy Position 2.5m CEP

Velocity 0.1m/sec Timing 300ns

Open Sky TTFF Hot start 1 second

Cold start 29 seconds average

Reacquisition < 1s

Sensitivity Tracking 161dBm

Update Rate 1Hz standard

Dynamics 4G

Operational Limits Altitude < 18,000m or Velocity < 515m/s

Datum Default WGS-84

Interface UART

Protocol NMEA-0183 V3.01, GGA, GLL, GSA, GSV, RMC, VTG

#### **Features**

- Tests 8 million time-frequency hypothesis per sec
- Open sky cold start 29 second
- · Signal detection better than -161dBm
- Reacquisition sensitivity 155dBm
- Accuracy 2.5m CEP
- · Multipath detection and suppression
- Supports active or passive antenna

# Underwriters Laboratories Required Global Positioning System (GPS) Statement

Note the following information required by Underwriters Laboratories:

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. ("UL") has not tested the performance or reliability of the Global Positioning System ("GPS") hardware, operating software or other aspects of this product. UL has only tested for fire, shock or casualties as outlined in UL's Standard(s) for Safety.UL60950-1 Certification does not cover the performance or reliability of the GPS hardware and GPS operating software. UL MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS, WARRANTIES OR CERTIFICATIONS WHATSOEVER REGARDING THE PERFORMANCE OR RELIABILITY OF ANY GPS RELATED FUNCTIONS OF THIS PRODUCT.

# Chapter 3 - SocketModem® CDMA (MTSMC-C1)

## Introduction

The Multi-Tech SocketModem CDMA is a complete, ready-to-integrate, embedded wireless modem. Designed for global use, it offers standards-based multi-band CDMA200 1x performance. The SocketModem CDMA is based on industry-standard open interfaces and utilizes Multi-Tech's universal socket design.

#### **Notes about Activation:**

- These units are shipped without network activation.
- To connect to the wireless network, you will have to establish a wireless account. See the Wireless Activation
  procedures in a separate document included with your Developer Kit and available on the Developer Kit CD.

# Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order this Product	
MTSMC-C1-N1	SocketModem 800/1900 MHz CDMA 1xRTT – Generic Random A-Key	Regional		
MTSMC-C1-N2	SocketModem 800/1900 MHz CDMA 1xRTT – Sprint (USA)	US		
MTSMC-C1-N3	SocketModem 800/1900 MHz CDMA 1xRTT – Verizon (USA)	US		
MTSMC-C1-N4	SocketModem 800 MHz CDMA 1xRTT with R–UIM	Regional		
MTSMC-C1-N9	SocketModem 800/1900 MHz CDMA 1xRTT – Generic Zero A-Key	Regional		
MTSMC-C1-N11	SocketModem 800/1900 MHz CDMA 1xRTT with R-UIM	Regional		
MTSMC-C1-N12	SocketModem 800/1900 MHz CDMA 1xRTT – Bell Mobility Canada	Canada		
MTSMC-C1-N14	SocketModem 800/1900 MHz CDMA 1xRTT – Alltel (USA)	US		
MTSMC-C1-N15	SocketModem 800/1900 MHz CDMA 1xRTT - Telus	Canada		
MTSMC-C1-N16	SocketModem 800/1900 MHz CDMA 1xRTT - Aeris	US		
Developer Kit				
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Global		

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

C1	CDMA
----	------

N1 Generic Random A-Key. Requires provisioning. Must be programmed with Provisioning Information (PRI) and a Preferred Roaming List (PRL).

N2 Sprint USA N3 Verizon USA

N4 800 MHz with R-UIM

N9 Generic Zero A-Key. Requires provisioning. Must be programmed with Provisioning

Information (PRI) and a Preferred Roaming List (PRL).

N11 800/1900 MHz with R-UIM

N12 Bell Mobility Canada

N14 Alltel USA

N15 Telus Canada

N16 Aeris US

UDK Universal Developer Kit

#### **Other Product Codes:**

The complete product code may end in  $.\mathbf{R}\mathbf{x}.$  For example, MTSMC-C1-N3.Rx.

"R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

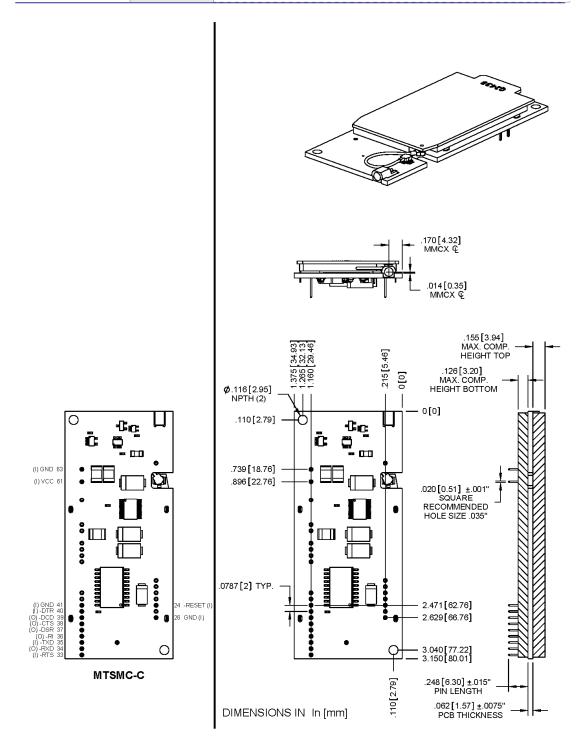
#### AT Commands Reference Guides

Products	AT Commands Reference Guide Title and Document Product Number	Fax Commands	Voice Commands
SocketModem CDMA	CDMA AT Commands Reference Guide (S000294x)	NA	included in
(MTSMC-C1)			S000294x

# Technical Specifications

The SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C1) meets the following specifications:

Category	Description
Standard	CDMA2000 1xRTT
Frequency Bands	Dual-band 800/1900 MHz CDMA
Serial/Data Speed	Serial interface supporting DTE speeds to 230K Packet data up to 153.6K bps forward and reverse channels Circuit-switched data up to 14.4K bps
Data Format	Asynchronous, transparent and non-transparent
Weight	1.2 oz. (34 g)
Operating Temperature	-30° to +70° C
Storage Temperature	-40° to +85° C
Humidity	20% to 90% (non-condensing)
Operating Voltage	5VDC
Power Measurements	5V: Typical: 400mA; Maximum: 700mA
Connectors	Antenna: MMCX R-UIM: Standard 3V R-UIM receptacle (For China only, 5V R-UIM)
Certifications & Approvals	Safety Certifications
Warranty	2 years
Features	Short Message Services (SMS): Mobile originated; Mobile terminated Cell broadcast Over the Air Activation (OTA) OTASP; OTAPA SMS Features: Text & PDU, Point-to-Point, cell broadcast TCP/IP stack AT command compatible Management Features: Phone book management Fixed dialing number Real time clock Alarm management Supports AMR (Adaptive Multi Rate) voice coder Supports Cellular Text Telephone Modem



# DC Electrical Characteristics

5VDC Characteristics (VDD = 5V ± 0.2V) <sub>VDDMAX</sub> = 5.25V			
Digital Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
–DTR (40), –TXD (35), –RTS (33)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
-RESET	Input High	Input Low	
	Min 2.0V	Max 0.5V	
Digital Outputs	Output High	Output Low	Current Drive:
-DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	Min 4V	Max 0.4V	2mA
Digital Input Capacitance			5 pF

# Power Measurements\*

Operating Mode	Band	Average (mA)
CDMA RXTX	Cellular	615
Full Power	PCS	770
CMA RXTX	Cellular	340
Average Power	PCS	445
CDMA Standby	Cellular	20
	PCS	20

 $<sup>^{\</sup>star}$  Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.

# Application Notes

# Flashing LED Interface

The flashing LED signal is used to indicate the working mode of the SocketModem.

#### LED and SocketModem Status

Signal	SocketModem Status		
OFF	Download mode or switched OFF>		
ON	Continuously lit	Switched ON (not registered on the network)	
	Flashing	Switched ON (registered on the network)	

# RF Interface

#### **Radio Characteristics**

	CDMA 800	CDMA 1900
Frequency RX	869 to 894 MHz	1930 to 1990 MHz
Frequency TX	824 to 849 MHz	1850 to 1910 MHz
Impedance	50 ohms	
VSWR	<2	
Typical Radiated Gain	0 dBi in at least one direction	
Output Power	.63W in AMPS	
	.35W in CDMA	

# RF Connection and Antenna

The RF connector on the SocketModern is an MMCX standard type. See Chapter 1 for Antenna System details.

#### Provisioning a Generic SocketModem CDMA

## The Difference between a Pre-Provisioned SocketModem CDMA and a Generic SocketModem CDMA

#### Pre-Provisioned SocketModem CDMA

Multi-Tech offers several pre-provisioned SocketModem CDMA units (see the *Product Ordering Information* table at the beginning of this chapter). Pre-provisioned SocketModem CDMA builds are pre-programmed to operate only on a designated CDMA carrier's network; for example, the *MTSMC-C1-N2* is pre-programmed (provisioned) for use on the Sprint network in the USA.

#### Generic SocketModem CDMA

Multi-Tech also offers two generic SocketModem CDMA models, the *MTSMC-C1-N1* (*Random A-Key*) and *MTSMC-C1-N9* (*Zero A-Key*). These generic SocketModems are not pre-programmed to operate on any designated CDMA carrier's network.

#### **Overview of the Provisioning Process**

#### Requirements

- A generic SocketModem CDMA-C1-N1 or -N9.
- AT Commands Reference Guide for the SocketModem CDMA.
- A developer software tool called WPST.

#### **Procedures**

- Step 1. Get the PRI and PRL from your wireless carrier.
- Step 2. Set the provisioning commands, which are described in the AT Commands Reference Guide for the SocketModem CDMA, Chapter 16, using the provisioning information provided by the CDMA wireless network carrier.
- Step 3. Using the WPST tool, download the carrier's specific PRI (Provisioning Information) and PRL (Preferred Roaming List) into the SocketModem CDMA.

The wireless modem is now provisioned and can be activated on your wireless carrier's network, according to the carrier's activation instructions.

See the Activation directions that accompany Multi-Tech wireless modems.

#### **Provisioning Terminology**

#### A-Key

The A-Key is a 64-bit cryptographic key variable stored in the semi-permanent memory of the mobile station and also known to the Authentication Center of the wireless carrier's system. The generation of the A-Key is the responsibility of the wireless service provider. It is established and entered when the mobile station is first put into service.

The CDMA network carrier you choose for you SocketModem CDMA product will let you know whether it uses the Random A-Key or the Zero A-Key in its authentication process. That will determine whether you purchase the -N1 or the -N9 build.

#### **Provisioning**

Provisioning is the programming of a SocketModem CDMA wireless modem to set the **PRI** and **PRL** provided by wireless network carrier that you are have chosen as your CDMA wireless network carrier. After the modem is provisioned, it can then be activated on the wireless network for which it is provisioned. Multi-Tech provides two SocketModems CDMA builds that are not pre-provisioned: MTSMC-C1-N1 and MTCAB-C1-N9.

**PRI** stands for Provisioning Information. Provisioning Information is your wireless network carrier's profile of parameter settings that must be programmed into your wireless modem in order for it to operate on the carrier's wireless network.

**PRL** stands for Preferred Roaming List. The PRL is a list of the wireless network service provider's preferred roaming partners. This list is downloaded from your network service provider during the provisioning process.

#### CDMA Terminology and Acronyms

This is an alphabetical list of the CDMA cellular industry's terminology and acronyms.

**2G** Second Generation. This is an all digital cellular systems developed to replace the first analog

cellular systems. (GSM and CDMA).

3G Third Generation. This is the next generation digital cellular systems designed to have high-speed

data access and higher voice capacity (CDMA & CDMA2000).

CBM Cell Broadcast Message. This is an SMS message that is broadcast to all mobiles on the network.

CDMA (Code Division Multiple Access). CDMA is a spread spectrum, digital wireless modulation

scheme for cellular communications systems. It has approximately 3 times the voice capacity of

GSM networks. See IS-95, IS-95B, IS-2000.

cdmaONE cdmaOne is a brand name, trademarked and reserved for the exclusive use of the CDMA

Development Group (see their Web site at cdg.org). cdmaOne describes a complete wireless system that incorporates the IS-95 CDMA air interface, the ANSI-41 network standard for switch interconnection and many other standards that make up a complete wireless system.

cdma2000 cdma2000 is a third generation (3G) wireless system. It contains a significant increase in voice

capacity and high-speed data rates. It is backward compatible with IS-95B and IS-95A.

cdma2000 1xRTT "1xRTT" stands for 1 times Radio Transmission Technology and is used to identify the version of

CDMA2000 radio technology that operates in a pair of 1.25-MHz radio channels (one times 1.25 MHz, as opposed to three times 1.25 MHz in 3xRTT). Although theoretically capable of higher data rates, most carrier implementations have limited the peak data rate to 144 kbit/s. While 1xRTT

officially qualifies as 3G technology, 1xRTT is considered by some to be a 2.5G.

**ESN** "ESN" stands for Electronic Serial Number. It is a 32-bit binary number that identifies each cellular

phone.

Handset (Path) Handset (Path). This is the audio path (microphone & speaker) that connects to a traditional hand

held telephone receiver, usually dual balanced electrical lines.

Headset (Path) Headset (Path). This is the audio path (microphone & speaker) that connects to an earpiece with

a microphone, usually single electrical lines.

IMSI International Mobile Station IS. This is an international 15 digital phone number that uniquely

identifies a mobile. IMSI=MCC + MNC + MIN.

**IOTA IOTA** stands for Internet Over The Air.

IS-95 is the first CDMA standard published by Qualcomm in 1993. It is a TIA standard for North

American cellular systems based on CDMA. It is widely deployed in North America and Asia.

IS-95A IS-95A is a CDMA standard with improved voice quality. IS-95A defines what generally is known as

cdmaOne, which supports voice and 14.4 Kbps data rates. This standard is widely used throughout

the world.

**IS-707** 

IS-95B IS-95B is a CDMA standard contains Medium Data Rate capabilities and bug fixes for system

access failures. It is considered a 2.5G system. It supports data rates up to 115 Kbps.

IS-2000 IS-2000 is the first 3G CDMA standard based on IS-95B. It contains a significant increase in voice

capacity and high-speed data rates. It is backward compatible with IS-95B and IS-95A. **TIA/EIA/IS-707** describes data services available on wideband spread spectrum systems. It is

organized into a series of related recommendations, some of which address functions common to

all CDMA data services and others that describe a specific data service.

MCC Mobile Country Code is a pre-defined 30-digital number that represents a country in the IMSI.

**MDN** stands for Mobile Data Number or the mobile phone number.

MIN stands for Mobile Identification Number or mobile user account number.

MNC MNC stands for Mobile Network Code, a pre-defined 2-digital number that represents a sub-

network in the IMSI (usually set to "00").

MO stands for Mobile Originated, an action (usually a call) that is first started from the phone. An

outgoing call or SMS.

MS stands for Mobile Station. The term MS is commonly used to represent the phone or mobile.

MT stands for Mobile Terminated. MT is an action, usually a call that is first started from a land

based network. An incoming call or SMS.

MSM stands for Mobile Station Modem.

NAM NAM stands for Number Assignment Modem. The NAM is collection of internal parameters that

define a working phone for a given network (phone number, access parameters, etc.).

NID NID stands for Network ID. The NID is an identification number that represents geographic location

of a common coverage area; but is a subset of the SID, usually a neighborhood in a large city. NID

is usually not used and is set to zero. Also see SID.

NV-RAM stands for Non-Volatile Random Access Memory. NV-RAM is a data storage device that

does not lose its data when power is turned off.

OTAPA OTAPA stands for Over The Air Parameter Administration. It is an automatic update in internal software parameters (PRL for example) by means of a specially defined CDMA data call that is

mobile terminated (MT).

OTASP stands for Over The Air Service Programming. It is an automatic update in internal

software parameters PRL; for example, PRL by means of a specially defined CDMA data call that

is mobile terminated (MT).

**P-REV** is the CDMA revision of the mobile or base station.

PDU PDU stands for Protocol Data Unit. It is a GSM SMS standard whereby any type of binary data can be transported via an SMS message. In the CDMA system, the PDU mode will not be supported;

instead, the Unicode format message is supported.

PN Offset PN Offset stands for Pseudorandom Noise Offset. In a CDMA network the PN offset is a variable time delay offset of a repeating random noise generator that is used to distinguish individual

sectors of a base station.

PRI PRI stands for Provisioning Information. Provisioning Information is your wireless network carrier's profile of information that must be programmed into your wireless modem in order for it to operate

on the carrier's wireless network.

PRL stands for Preferred Roaming List. The Roaming List is provided by the wireless network

carrier during the process of provisioning your SocketModem. The PRL is a list of wireless service

provider's preferred roaming partners.

**PSTN** stands for Public Switching Telephone Network. It is the traditional telephone network.

**RF** stands for Radio Frequency.

RSSI stands for Receive Signal Strength Indicator: This parameter represents the total RF received

signal power from the base station(s) the mobile sees.

R-UIM stands for Removable User Identity SocketModem. The R-UIM is similar to a SIM

(Subscriber Identity SocketModem), but it is designed for networks other than GSM (Global System

for Mobile Telecommunications); i.e., networks such as CDMA.

The R-UIM card contains user information and data features on a removable smart card about the size of a postage stamp. It is a dual-mode solution that can store both GSM provisioning and CDMA provisioning on a single card. When used with a GSM handset, the R-UIM operates like a

GSM SIM.

SID SID stands for System ID. The SID is an identification number that represents geographic locations

of a common coverage area, usually a large city. Also see NID.

SIM SIM stands for Subscriber Identity SocketModem. A SIM card is a portable memory chip. The SIM holds personal identity information, cell phone number, phone book, text messages and other data.

SMS stands for Short Messaging Service. it is a supplementary service that is capable of sending

and receiving short length text messages to/from the mobile.

**TA/TE TA/TE** stands for Terminal Application/Terminal Equipment. This is the end "device" (combination

of hardware and software) that communicates with a modem via a serial link. In this context, it is

the device (PDA/Computer) connected to the modem. Also see DTE.

## Chapter 4 - SocketModem<sup>®</sup> EDGE (MTSMC-E1)

#### Introduction

The Multi-Tech SocketModem EDGE embedded wireless modem delivers some of the fastest cellular data speeds by utilizing EDGE technology. It allows users to connect to the Internet and send and receive data up to three times faster than possible with an ordinary GSM/GPRS network making it ideal for highly data-intensive applications. Based on industry-standard open interfaces, the SocketModem EDGE wireless modem is equipped with quad-band GSM, which means it can be used worldwide on all existing GSM networks.

#### Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order This Product
MTSMC-E1	SocketModem Quad Band EDGE Class 12 – 5V	Global	
MTSMC-E1-V	SocketModem Quad Band EDGE Class 12 w/Voice - 5V	Global	
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Global	

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

E1 EDGE V Voice

UDK Universal Developer Kit

#### Other Product Codes:

The complete product code may end in .Rx. For example, MTSMC-E1.Rx

"R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

#### AT Commands Reference Guide

	Reference Guides Title and Document Product Number	Fax Commands	Voice Commands
SocketModem EDGE	SocketModem EDGE	NA	Included in S000371x
(MTSMC-E and E1)	AT Commands Reference Guide (S000371x)		

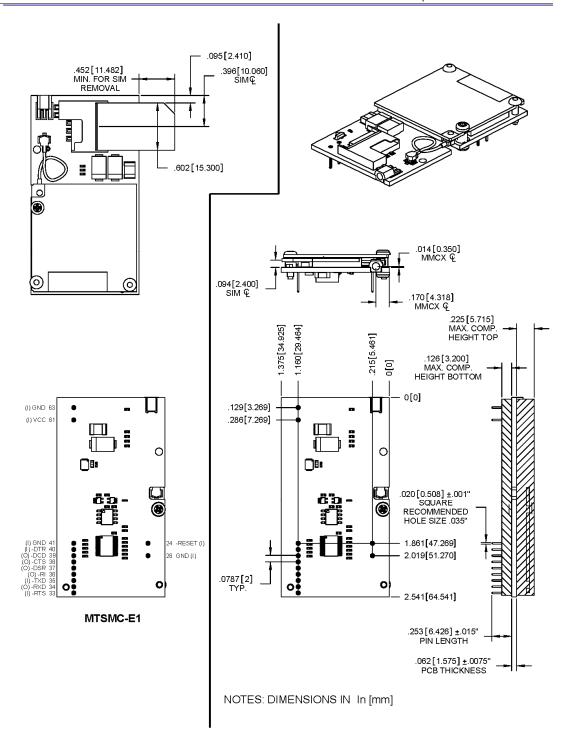
#### Technical Specifications

The SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC- E1) wireless modem meets the following specifications:

	INTSMC- ET) wireless modern meets the following specifications:			
Category	Description			
Standards	EDGE: E-GPRS Class 12			
Data Speed	GPRS: GPRS Class 12			
Data Speed	Packet Data rates up to 240K bps (modulation & coding scheme, MCS 1-9, Mobile station Class B)			
	Circuit-switched data up to 14.4 bps non-transparent mode, asynchronous			
Serial Speed	Serial interface supporting DTE speeds to 460K bps			
Band Frequency	Quad-band 850/900/1800/1900 MHz			
Connectors	Antenna: MMCX			
	SIM: Standard 1.8V or 3V SIM receptacle			
IP Protocols Supported	TCP, UDP, DNS, FTP, SMTP, POP3, HTTP			
Operating Voltage	5VDC			
Operating Temperature	-30° to +70° C			
Storage Environment	-40° to +85° C			
Humidity	20% to 90% non-condensing			
Physical Dimensions	2.541" L x 1.375" W 64.541mm L x 34.92 mm W			
	For maximum component heights top and bottom, see the Mechanical Drawings on the next			
	two pages.			
Weight	1 oz. (0.028 kg.)			
Compliance	EMC Compliance			
	FCC Part 2, 15, 22, 24			
	EN 55022 EN 55024			
	Radio Compliance			
	FCC Part 22			
	FCC Part 24			
	RSS 132 RSS 133			
	EN 301 511			
	EN 301 489-1			
	EN 301 489-7			
	AS/ACIF S042.1 AS/ACIF S042.3			
	Safety Compliance			
	UL 60950-1			
	cUL 60950-1			
	IEC 60950-1 AS/NZS 60950:2000			
	Network Compliance			
	PTCRB			
Warranty	2 years			
Intelligent Features	SMS - Text & PDU, Point-to-Point, cell broadcast			
	AT Command Compatible			
	Voice features include Half Rate (HR), Full Rate (FR), Enhanced Full Rate (EFR), Adaptive multi rate (AMR), as well as hands free echo cancellation, and noise reduction			
	Embedded TCP/IP protocol stack brings Internet connectivity			

Mechanical Drawings - Basic Build

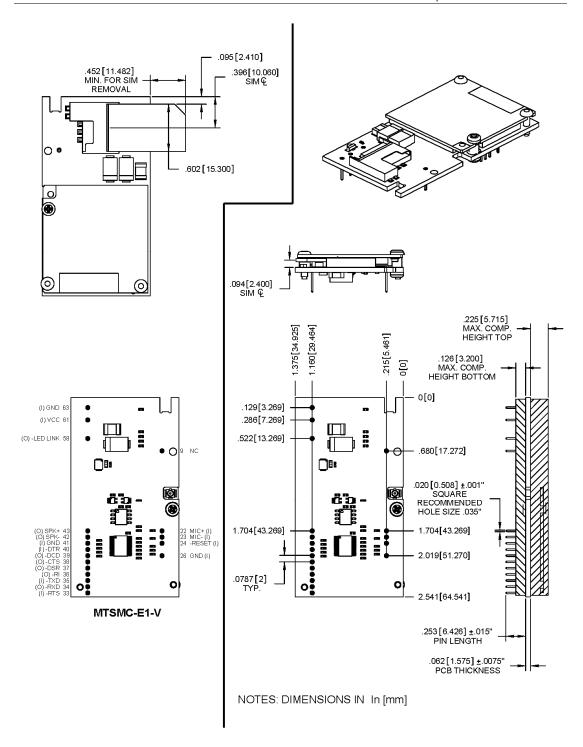
Comment [DAR41]: Vault Data for E1 is #372 8/26/09



## Mechanical Drawings - Voice

Build

Comment [DAR42]: Vault Data for E1 Voice is #372 8/26/09



#### DC Electrical Characteristics

Comment [DAR43]: New from Dustin 8/31/09 for E1

#### **Operating Conditions**

#### 5 Volts

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Supply Range - Vcc	4.75	5.25

#### **Absolute Maximum Rating**

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Voltage at Any Signal Pin	0	5

#### DC Electrical Characteristics

	Units (Volts)	
Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Digital Signal Input Low Level	0	0.8
Digital Signal Input High Level	2	5
Digital Signal Output Low Level	0	0.33
Digital Signal Output High Level	3.84	5
Reset (Low Active) Input Low	0	1.14
Reset (Low Active) Input High	2.7	5
	10.5	
Digital Input Capacitance	10pF	

#### Power Measurements

#### MTSMC-E1 and MTSMC-E1-V Measured Power\* at Input Voltage 5.00

L	Sleep	Typical Maximum		Peak
Current (AMPS)	0.010	0.128	0.675	1.500
Watts	0.050	0.64	3.2	

<sup>\*</sup> Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.

INPUT VOLT

Current(AMPS

Comment [DAR44]: Watts

These measurements apply to both the MTSMC-E1 and MTSMC-E1-V since the only difference is the voice pins.From Jerome 9/8/09

#### Application Notes

#### RF Performances

RF performances are compliant with the ETSI recommendation 05.05 and 11.10. The main parameters are:

#### **Receiver Features**

- EGSM Sensitivity: < -108 dBm
- GSM 1800/GSM 1900 Sensitivity: < -107 dBm</li>
- Selectivity @ 200 kHz : > +9 dBc
- Selectivity @ 400 kHz : > +41 dBc
- Dynamic range : 62 dB
- Intermodulation : > -43 dBm
- Co-channel rejection: + 9 dBc

#### **Transmitter Features**

- Maximum output power (EGSM): 24 dBm +/- 2 dB
- Maximum output power (DCS/PCS): 30 dBm +/- 2 dB
- Minimum output power (EGSM): 5 dBm +/- 5 dB
- Minimum output power (DCS/PCS): 0 dBm +/- 5 dB
- H2 level : < -30 dBm
- H3 level : < -30 dBm
- Noise in 925 935 MHz : < -67 dBm
- Noise in 935 960 MHz : < -79 dBm
- Noise in 1805 1880 MHz : < -71 dBm
- Phase error at peak power : < 5 ° RMS
- Frequency error: +/- 0.1 ppm max

#### RF Connection and Antenna

The RF connector on the SocketModem is an MMCX standard type. See Chapter 1 for Antenna System details.

#### Audio Interface - Electrical Characteristics

#### Speaker Output

Differential speaker output capable of driving 8 ohm load. 1.0945 Vpp (differential) typical.

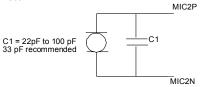
#### Microphone Input

Balanced microphone input: full scale input 1.1 Vpp.

#### Microphone Inputs

The MIC inputs are differential ones. They already include the convenient biasing for an electret microphone (0,5 mA and 2 Volts). This electret microphone can be directly connected on these inputs. The impedance of the microphone has to be around 2K. These inputs are the standard ones for a handset design.

The gain of the MIC inputs is internally adjusted. The gain can be tuned from 30dB to 51dB. The connection to the microphone is direct.



### Chapter 5 - SocketModem® HSDPA (MTSMC-H)

#### Introduction

The Multi-Tech SocketModem HSDPA embedded wireless modem delivers some of the fastest cellular data speeds by utilizing HSDPA technology. It allows users to connect to the Internet and send and receive data faster than possible with an ordinary GSM/GPRS network making it ideal for highly data-intensive applications. Based on industry-standard open interfaces, the SocketModem wireless modem is equipped with quad-band, high-speed RS232 technology, which means it can be used worldwide on all existing GSM networks. In addition, it utilizes Multi-Tech's universal socket design.

#### Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order This Product
MTSMC-H	SocketModem Tri Band HSPDA Serial Modem – 5V	Global	
MTSMC-H-U	SocketModem Tri Band HSPDA USB Modem – 5V	Global	
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Global	

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

H HSDPA (High-Speed Downlink Packet Access)

U USB

UDK Universal Developer Kit

#### **Other Product Codes:**

The complete product code may end in .Rx. For example, MTSMC-H.Rx.

"R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

#### AT Commands Reference Guide

	Reference Guides Title and Document Product Number	Fax Commands	Voice Commands
SocketModem HSDPA	SocketModem HSDPA	NA	NA
(MTSMC-H)	AT Commands Reference Guide (S000453x)		

#### Technical Specifications

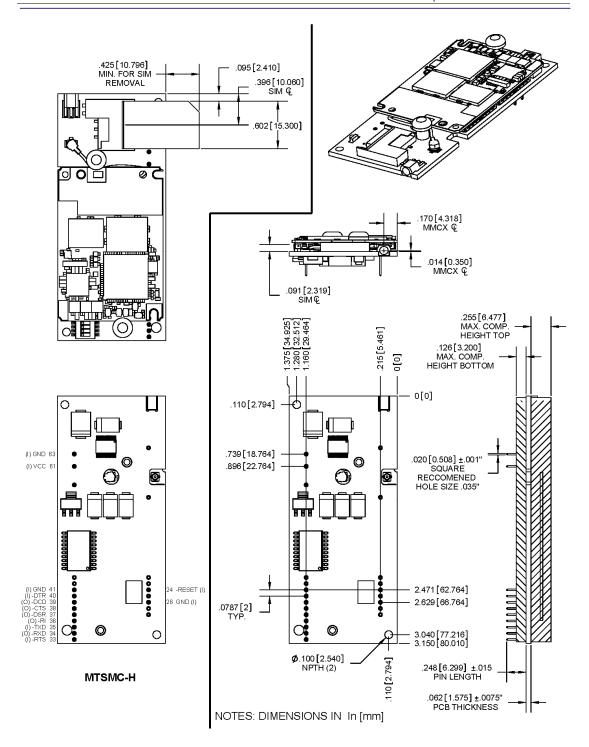
The SocketModem HSDPA (MTSMC- H) wireless modem meets the following specifications:

Category	Description		
General			
Frequency Bands	UMTS/HSDPA: Triple band, 850/1900/2100MHz     GSM/GPRS/EDGE: Quad band, 850/900/1800/1900MHz		
GSM Class	Small MS		
Output power (according to Release 99)	Class 1 (+30dBm ±2dB) for GSM1800 Class 1 (+30dBm ±2dB) for GSM1900 Class E2 (+27dBm ± 3dB) for GSM 850 8-PSK Class E2 (+27dBm ± 3dB) for GSM 900 8-PSK Class E2 (+26dBm +3 /-4dB) for GSM 1800 8-PSK Class E2 (+26dBm +3 /-4dB) for GSM 1800 8-PSK Class E3 (+26dBm +1/-3dB) for GSM 1900 8-PSK Class 3 (+24dBm +1/-3dB) for UMTS 2100, WCDMA FDD Bdl Class 3 (+24dBm +1/-3dB) for UMTS 1900,WCDMA FDD Bdll Class 3 (+24dBm +1/-3dB) for UMTS 850, WCDMA FDD BdV		
Power Supply	5VDC ± 10%		
Physical Description	3.1" L x 1.4" W x 0.5" H; 1 oz. (7.8 cm x 3.5 cm x 1.2 cm; 28 g)		
HSDPA Features			
3GPP Release 5	3.6 Mbps, UL 384 kbps UE CAT. [1-6], 11, 12 supported Compressed mode (CM) supported according to 3GPP TS25.212		
UMTS Features			
3GPP Release 4	PS data rate – 384 kbps DL / 384 kbps UL		
	CS data rate – 64 kbps DL / 64 kbps UL		
GSM / GPRS / EGPRS Feature	s		
Data Transfer	GPRS     Multislot Class 10     Full PBCCH support     Mobile Station Class B		
	Coding Scheme 1 – 4 EGPRS  EDGE E2 power class for 8 PSK  Downlink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  Uplink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  BEP reporting  SRB loopback and test mode B  8-bit, 11-bit RACH  PBCCH support  1 phase/2 phase access procedures  Link adaptation and IR  NACC, extended UL TBF  Mobile Station Class B  CSD  V.110, RLP, non-transparent  9.6 kbps		
SMS	EGPRS  EDGE E2 power class for 8 PSK  Downlink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  Uplink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  BEP reporting  SRB loopback and test mode B  B-bit, 11-bit RACH  PBCCH support  1 phase/2 phase access procedures  Link adaptation and IR  NACC, extended UL TBF  Mobile Station Class B  CSD  V.110, RLP, non-transparent  9.6 kbps  Point-to-point MT and MO Cell broadcast		
SMS	EGPRS  • EDGE E2 power class for 8 PSK  • Downlink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  • Uplink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  • BEP reporting  • SRB loopback and test mode B  • 8-bit, 11-bit RACH  • PBCCH support  • 1 phase/2 phase access procedures  • Link adaptation and IR  • NACC, extended UL TBF  • Mobile Station Class B  CSD  • V.110, RLP, non-transparent  • 9.6 kbps  Point-to-point MT and MO		
Software	EGPRS  EDGE E2 power class for 8 PSK  Downlink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  Uplink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  BEP reporting  SRB loopback and test mode B  8-bit, 11-bit RACH  PBCCH support  1 phase/2 phase access procedures  Link adaptation and IR  NACC, extended UL TBF  Mobile Station Class B  CSD  V.110, RLP, non-transparent  9.6 kbps  Point-to-point MT and MO  Cell broadcast  Text and PDU mode		
	EGPRS  EDGE E2 power class for 8 PSK  Downlink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  Uplink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  BEP reporting  SRB loopback and test mode B  8-bit, 11-bit RACH  PBCCH support  1 phase/2 phase access procedures  Link adaptation and IR  NACC, extended UL TBF  Mobile Station Class B  CSD  V.110, RLP, non-transparent  9.6 kbps  Point-to-point MT and MO Cell broadcast  Text and PDU mode  AT GSM 07.05 and 07.07, Siemens		
Software AT Commands	EGPRS  EDGE E2 power class for 8 PSK  Downlink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  Uplink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  BEP reporting SRB loopback and test mode B  B-bit, 11-bit RACH PBCCH support  1 phase/2 phase access procedures Link adaptation and IR  NACC, extended UL TBF Mobile Station Class B  CSD  V.110, RLP, non-transparent 9.6 kbps  Point-to-point MT and MO Cell broadcast Text and PDU mode  AT GSM 07.05 and 07.07, Siemens AT commands for RIL compatibility (NDIS/RIL)		
Software AT Commands Microsoft® Compatibility	EGPRS  • EDGE E2 power class for 8 PSK  • Downlink coding schemes − CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  • Uplink coding schemes − CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  • BEP reporting  • SRB loopback and test mode B  • 8-bit, 11-bit RACH  • PBCCH support  • 1 phase/2 phase access procedures  • Link adaptation and IR  • NACC, extended UL TBF  • Mobile Station Class B  CSD  • V.110, RLP, non-transparent  • 9.6 kbps  Point-to-point MT and MO  Cell broadcast  Text and PDU mode  AT GSM 07.05 and 07.07, Siemens  AT commands for RIL compatibility (NDIS/RIL)  RIL / NDIS for Windows Mobile <sup>®</sup>		
Software AT Commands	EGPRS  EDGE E2 power class for 8 PSK  Downlink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  Uplink coding schemes – CS 1-4, MCS 1-9  BEP reporting SRB loopback and test mode B  B-bit, 11-bit RACH PBCCH support  1 phase/2 phase access procedures Link adaptation and IR  NACC, extended UL TBF Mobile Station Class B  CSD  V.110, RLP, non-transparent 9.6 kbps  Point-to-point MT and MO Cell broadcast Text and PDU mode  AT GSM 07.05 and 07.07, Siemens AT commands for RIL compatibility (NDIS/RIL)		

Category	Description			
Interfaces				
USB	USB 2.0 full speed (12Mbit/s) CDC ACM compliant NDIS driver included (XP only)			
Serial Modem Interface	8-wire modem interface with status and control lines, unbalanced, asynchronous.			
UICC Interface	Supported chip cards: SIM / UICC 3V, 1.8V			
Connectors	Antenna: MMCX SIM: Standard 3V SIM receptacle			
SocketModem Interface	Socket pins			
Operating Environment				
Operating Temperatures	Min -30 °C Typ +25 °C Max +60 °C			
Storage Environment	-40° to +85° C			
Humidity	20% to 90% non-condensing			
Certifications, Approvals, Dire	Certifications, Approvals, Directives, Warranty			
Certifications & Approvals	Certifications: CE Mark, R&TTE			
	Safety Certifications: UL 60950-1 EN 60950-1			
	EMC Approvals: FCC Part 22, 24 EN 301 489-1 EN 301 489-7 RSS 132, 133			
	Network: PTCRB			
RoHS	All hardware components fully compliant with EU RoHS Directive			
Warranty	2 years			

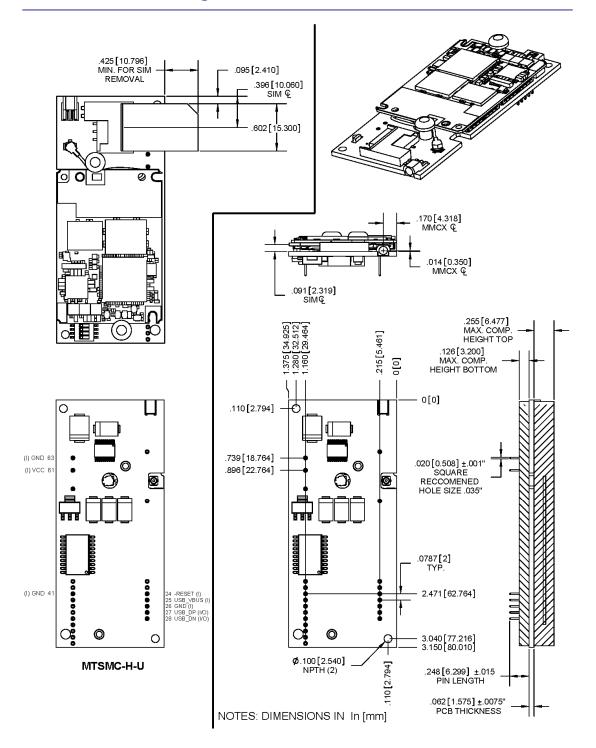
Mechanical Drawings - Basic Build

Comment [DAR45]: Vault Data #319 for basic build 8/26/09



Comment [DAR46]: Vault Data #319 for USB 8/26/09

#### Mechanical Drawings - USB Build



#### DC Electrical Characteristics

#### I/O DC Characteristics

#### 5VDC Characteristics (VDD = 5V $\pm$ 0.25V) VDDMAX = 5.25V

Digital Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
-RESET	Input High	Input Low	
	Min 2.6V	Max 1.0V	
Digital Outputs	Output High	Output Low	<b>Current Drive</b>
-DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	Min 4V	Max 0.4V	2mA
Digital Input Capacitance			5 pF

#### Power Measurements\*

#### **Data Mode Power Consumption**

#### GPRS Power Consumption in EGSM/GPRS 900 MHz and GSM/GRPS 850 MHz

Voltage	Conditions	I <sub>NOM</sub>	I <sub>MAX</sub>
+5V	During TX bursts @ 2W	1.8 A	2.9 A
+5V	Average Class 8	375mA	
+5V	Average Class 10	540mA	
+5V	Average idle mode	40mA	

#### GPRS Power Consumption in GSM/GRPS 1800 MHz and GSM/GRPS 1900 MHz

Voltage	Conditions	I <sub>NOM</sub>	I <sub>MAX</sub>
+5V	During TX bursts @ 1W	1.5 A	2.1 A
+5V	Average Class 8	325mA	
+5V	+5V Average Class 10		
+5V	Average idle mode	40mA	

#### EGPRS Power Consumption in EGRPS 900 MHz and EGRPS 850 MHz

Voltage	Conditions	I <sub>NOM</sub>	I <sub>MAX</sub>
+5V	During TX bursts @ 2W	1.8 A	2.9 A
+5V	Average Class 8	315mA	
+5V	Average Class 10	410mA	
+5V	Average idle mode	40mA	

#### EGPRS Power Consumption in EGRPS 1800 MHz and EGRPS 1900 MHz

Voltage	Conditions	I <sub>NOM</sub>	I <sub>MAX</sub>
+5V	During TX bursts @ 2W	1.8 A	2.9 A
+5V	Average Class 8	290mA	
+5V	Average Class 10	355mA	
+5V	Average idle mode	40mA	

#### **WCDMA Power Consumption**

Voltage	Conditions	I <sub>NOM</sub>	I <sub>MAX</sub>
+5V	UMTS Data transfer Band I @+10dBm	390mA	
+5V	HSDPA Data transfer Band I @+10dBm	450mA	
+5V	UMTS Data transfer Band I @+23dBm	750mA	820mA <sup>1</sup>
+5V	HSDPA Data transfer Band I @+23dBm	775mA	850mA <sup>1</sup>
+5V	UMTS Data transfer Band II @+10dBm	455mA	
+5V	HSDPA Data transfer Band II @+10dBm	500mA	
+5V	UMTS Data transfer Band II @+23dBm	810mA	930mA <sup>1</sup>
+5V	HSDPA Data transfer Band II @+23dBm	850mA	930mA <sup>1</sup>
+5V	UMTS Data transfer Band V @+10dBm	390mA	
+5V	HSDPA Data transfer Band V @+10dBm	420mA	
+5V	UMTS Data transfer Band V @+23dBm	620mA	790mA <sup>1</sup>
+5V	HSDPA Data transfer Band V @+23dBm	640mA	820mA <sup>1</sup>

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Under total mismatch conditions at antenna connector.

<sup>\*</sup> Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.

#### Application Notes

#### RF Performances

RF performances are compliant with the ETSI recommendation 05.05 and 11.10. The main parameters are:

#### Receiver Features

- EGSM Sensitivity: < -108 dBm
- GSM 1800/GSM 1900 Sensitivity: < -107 dBm</li>
- Selectivity @ 200 kHz: > +9 dBc
- Selectivity @ 400 kHz: > +41 dBc
- Dynamic range: 62 dB
- Intermodulation: > -43 dBm
- Co-channel rejection: + 9 dBc

#### **Transmitter Features**

- Maximum output power (EGSM): 24 dBm +/- 2 dB
- Maximum output power (DCS/PCS): 30 dBm +/- 2 dB
- Minimum output power (EGSM): 5 dBm +/- 5 dB
- Minimum output power (DCS/PCS): 0 dBm +/- 5 dB
- H2 level: < -30 dBm</li>
- H3 level: < -30 dBm</li>
- Noise in 925 935 MHz: < -67 dBm</li>
- Noise in 935 960 MHz: < -79 dBm
- Noise in 1805 1880 MHz: < -71 dBm</li>
- Phase error at peak power: < 5 ° RMS
- Frequency error: +/- 0.1 ppm max

#### RF Connection and Antenna

The RF connector on the SocketModern is an MMCX standard type. See Chapter 1 for Antenna System details.

#### Air Interface

#### Air Interface GSM / UMTS

Parameter	Conditions	Min.	Тур.	Max.	Unit
HSDPA / UMTS Connectivity	Band I, II, V				
UMTS Frequency Range	UMTS 850 Band V	824		849	MHz
Uplink (UE to Node B)	UMTS 1900 Band II	1850		1910	MHz
	UMTS 2100 Band I	1920		1980	MHz
UMTS Frequency Range	UMTS 850 Band V	869		894	MHz
Downlink (Node B to UE)	UMTS 1900 Band II	1930		1990	MHz
	UMTS 2100 Band I	2110		2170	MHz
Receiver Input Sensitivity @	UMTS 850 Band V		-109		dBm
ARP	UMTS 1900 Band II		-107		dBm
	UMTS 2100 Band I		-108		dBm
RF Power@ ARP with	UMTS 850 Band V	+21	+23	+25	dBm
50Ohm Load	UMTS 1900 Band II	+21	+23	+25	dBm
	UMTS 2100 Band I	+21	+23	+25	dBm
GPRS Coding Schemes	Class 10, CS1 to CS4				
EGPRS	Class 10, MCS1 to MCS9				
GSM Class	Small MS				
GSM Frequency range	GSM 850	824		849	MHz
Uplink (MS to BTS)	E-GSM 900	880		915	MHz
	GSM 1800	1710		1785	MHz
	GSM 1900	1850		1910	MHz
GSM Frequency range	GSM 850	869		894	MHz
Downlink (BTS to MS)	E-GSM 900	925		960	MHz
	GSM 1800	1805		1880	MHz

	GSM 1900	1930		1990	MHz
				•	•
Static Receiver input Sensitivity	GSM 850	-102	-108		dBm
@ ARP	E-GSM 900	-102	-108		dBm
	GSM 1800	-102	-107		dBm
	GSM 1900	-102	-107		dBm
RF Power@ ARP with	GSM 850	31	32	35	dBm
50Ohm Load	E-GSM 900	31	32	35	dBm
(GSM; 1 TX)	GSM 1800	28	29.25	32	dBm
	GSM 1900	28	29.25	32	dBm
RF Power@ ARP with	GSM 850		32		dBm
50Ohm Load	E-GSM 900		32		dBm
(GPRS; 1 TX)	GSM 1800		29.25		dBm
	GSM 1900		29.25		dBm
RF Power@ ARP with	GSM 850		27		dBm
50Ohm Load	E-GSM 900		27		dBm
(EGPRS; 1 TX)	GSM 1800		26		dBm
	GSM 1900		26		dBm
RF Power@ ARP with	GSM 850		30.50		dBm
50Ohm Load	E-GSM 900		30.50		dBm
(GPRS; 2 TX)	GSM 1800		27.75		dBm
	GSM 1900		27.75		dBm
RF Power@ ARP with	GSM 850		25		dBm
50Ohm Load	E-GSM 900		25		dBm
(EGPRS; 2 TX)	GSM 1800		24		dBm
	GSM 1900		24		dBm

#### Configuring the HSDPA Modem on Linux SLAX 6

All recent distributions of Linux Kernel v2.6 or higher and CDC\_ACM USB will work well with the HSPDA modem. Follow procedure outlined here using the HSDPA on Linux SLAX 6, an efficient live distribution you can install on a USB stick. See www.slax.org.

1. Set the HSDPA in modem mode so that it can be enumerated automatically:

AT^SUSB="Startup","Mdm"

AT^SMSO

- 2. Boot SLAX
- 3. Plug the USB cable into the PC
- 4. Enable enumeration in a terminal:

modprobe usbserial vendor=0x0681 product=0x0047

5. Make sure that the modem was enumerated

Is -la /dev/ttyUSB\*

The response should be: /dev/ttyUSB0

- 6. Launch KPPP&
- 7. Create a new account with AT&T:

Dial \*99\*\*\*1#

8. Create a new modem

HC25

Modem device: /dev/ttyUSB0

Flow control: None Line Termination: CR Connection Speed: 921600

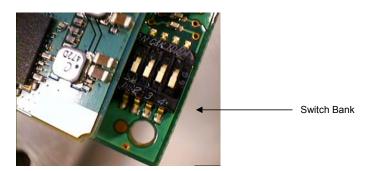
- 9. Add modem commands to the initialization string; i.e., ATZ and AT+CGDCONT=1,"IP","isp.cingular"
- 10. Enter PAP authentication

Login and enter password as usual

#### Baud Rate Switches on the HSDPA SocketModem

Note: For HSDPA serial model only.

MTSMC-H SocketModem Baud Rate dip switch settings



•	•	•	•	920K
1	2	3	4	

•				
	•	•	•	460K
1	2	3	4	

	•			
•		•	•	230K
1	2	3	4	

•	•			115K
		•	•	SocketModem
1	2	3	4	Default

			•		
	•	•		•	57.6K
Ì	1	2	3	4	

,	•		•		
		•		•	38.4K
	1	2	3	4	

	•	•		
•			•	19.2K
1	2	3	4	

•	•	•		
			•	9.6K
1	2	3	4	

Comment [DAR47]: SocketModem EDGE.gif

#### Operating Modes

The table below briefly summarizes the various operating modes.

Mode	Function	
Normal operation	GSM / GPRS / UMTS / HSDPA SLEEP (for USB only)	Power saving mode set automatically when no call is in progress and the USB connection is suspended by host or not present.
	GSM IDLE	Software is active. Once registered to the GSM network, paging with BTS is carried out in order to achieve synchrony with the GSM network. The repetition rate depends on the parameter BSPA_Multiframe. The SocketModem is ready to send and receive.
	GSM TALK	Connection between two subscribers is in progress. Power consumption depends on the GSM network coverage and several connection settings (e.g. DTX off/on, FR/EFR/HR, hopping sequences and antenna connection). The following applies when power is to be measured in TALK_GSM mode: DTX off, FR and no frequency hopping, otherwise same as for IDLE measurements.
	GPRS IDLE	The SocketModem is attached and ready for GPRS data transfer, but no data is currently sent or received.
	GPRS DATA	GPRS data transfer in progress. Power consumption depends on network settings (e.g. power control level), uplink / downlink data rates and GPRS configuration (e.g., used multislot settings).
	EGPRS DATA	EGPRS data transfer in progress. Power consumption depends on network settings (e.g. power control level), uplink / downlink data rates and EGPRS configuration (e.g., used multislot settings).
	UMTS / HSDPA IDLE	The SocketModem is attached and ready for UMTS / HSDPA data transfer, but no data is currently sent or received.
	UMTS DATA	UMTS data transfer in progress. Power consumption depends on network settings (e.g., TPC Pattern) and data transfer rate.
	HSDPA DATA	HSDPA data transfer in progress. Power consumption depends on network settings (e.g., TPC Pattern) and data transfer rate.

#### Turn off the SocketModem Using AT Command

The best and safest approach to powering down is to issue the AT^SMSO command. This procedure lets the SocketModem log off from the network and allows the software to enter into a secure state and safe data before disconnecting the power supply. The mode is referred to as Power-down mode. In this mode, only the RTC stays active.

After sending AT^SMSO do not enter any other AT commands. There is one way to verify that the SocketModem turns off:

Wait for the "OK" – response. It indicates that data has been stored non-volatile and that the SocketModem turns after about one second.

Important Note: The SocketModem requires a reset to become active again.

#### Automatic Shutdown

Automatic shutdown takes effect if:

- The modem exceeds the critical limits of overtemperature or undertemperature.

  The board temperature is constantly monitored by an internal NTC resistor. The values detected by the NTC resistor are measured directly on the board and are therefore not fully identical with the ambient temperature.

  Each time the board temperature goes out of range or back to normal, the modem instantly displays an alert (if enabled).
  - URCs indicating the level "1" or "-1" allow the user to take appropriate precautions, such as protecting
    the SocketModem from exposure to extreme conditions. The presentation of the URCs depends on the
    settings selected with the AT^SCTM write command:
    AT^SCTM=1: Presentation of URCs is always enabled.
    - AT^SCTM=0 (default): Presentation of URCs is enabled for 15 seconds time after startup. After 15 seconds operation, the presentation will be disabled, i.e. no alert messages can be generated.
  - URCs indicating the level "2" or "-2" are instantly followed by an orderly shutdown, except in cases of temperature control during an emergency call (see paragraph below). The presentation of these URCs is always enabled; i.e., they will be output even though the factory setting AT^SCTM=0 was never changed.

#### Temperature-Dependent Alerts

Sending temperature alert (15s after start-up; otherwise, only if URC presentation enabled)		
^SCTM_B: 1	Caution: SocketModem close to over-temperature limit.	
^SCTM_B: -1	Caution: SocketModem close to under-temperature limit.	
^SCTM_B: 0	SocketModem back to uncritical temperature range.	
Automatic shutdown (URC appears no matter whether or not presentation was enabled)		
^SCTM_B: 2	Alert: SocketModem is above over-temperature limit and switches off.	
^SCTM_B: -2	Alert: SocketModem is below under-temperature limit and switches off.	

#### Notes:

- The MTSMC-H will not transmit temperature URC alerts.
- · The URCs will not display in data mode.

#### Temperature Control during an Emergency Call

If the temperature limit is exceeded while an emergency call is in progress the engine continues to measure the temperature, but deactivates the shutdown functionality. If the temperature is still out of range when the call ends, the SocketModem switches off immediately (without another alert message).

#### Power Saving

The modem is able to reduce its functionality to a minimum (during the so-called SLEEP mode) in order to minimize its current consumption. The following sections explain the SocketModem's network dependant power saving

The implementation of the USB host interface also influences the SocketModem's power saving behavior and therefore its current consumption. During normal WCDMA operation; i.e., the modem is connected to a WCDMA network, the duration of a power-saving period varies. It may be calculated using the following formula:

 $t = 2^{DRX \text{ value}} * 10 \text{ ms} (WCDMA frame duration).}$ 

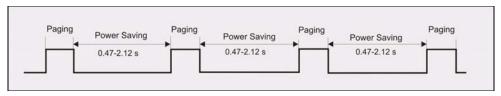
#### Power Saving While Attached to GSM Networks

The power saving possibilities while attached to a GSM network depend on the paging timing cycle of the base station. The duration of a power saving interval can be calculated using the following formula:

t = 4.615 ms (TDMA frame duration) \* 51 (number of frames) \* DRX value.

DRX (Discontinuous Reception) is a value from 2 to 9, resulting in paging intervals between 0.47 and 2.12 seconds. The DRX value of the base station is assigned by the GSM network operator.

In the pauses between listening to paging messages, the SocketModem resumes power saving, as shown in the figure below.



#### **Power Saving and Paging in GSM Networks**

The varying pauses explain the different potential for power saving. The longer the pause the less power is consumed.

Generally, power saving depends on the SocketModem's application scenario and may differ from the above mentioned normal operation. The power saving interval may be shorter than 0.47 seconds or longer than 2.12 seconds.

#### Power Saving While Attached to WCDMA Networks

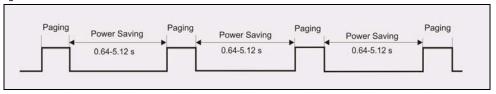
The power saving possibilities while attached to a WCDMA network depend on the paging timing cycle of the base station.

During normal WCDMA operation, i.e., the SocketModem is connected to a WCDMA network, the duration of a power saving period varies. It may be calculated using the following formula:

t = 2DRX value \* 10 ms (WCDMA frame duration).

DRX (Discontinuous Reception) in WCDMA networks is a value between 6 and 9, thus resulting in power saving intervals between 0.64 and 5.12 seconds. The DRX value of the base station is assigned by the WCDMA network operator.

In the pauses between listening to paging messages, the SocketModem resumes power saving, as shown in the figure below.



#### Power Saving and Paging in WCDMA Networks

The varying pauses explain the different potential for power saving. The longer the pause the less power is consumed.

Generally, power saving depends on the SocketModem's application scenario and may differ from the above mentioned normal operation. The power saving interval may be shorter than 0.64 seconds or longer than 5.12 seconds

#### Power Saving During Network Search, GSM/WCDMA

The power saving interval during network search depends on the network registration mode configured for the modem. This mode can be specified with the AT^SCFG command parameter MEopMode/RM:

- In "Fast" mode, the power saving interval may last for up to 5 seconds.
- In "Normal" mode, the power saving interval may last for up to 40 seconds.

For details on how to configure the AT^SCFG parameter MEopMode/RM see the HSDPA AT Command Guide.

#### Interface Signal Descriptions

#### **USB** Interface

The SocketModem supports a USB 2.0 Full Speed (12Mbit/s) device interface. A USB host has to support at least 6 'Message Pipes" to work with the HSPDA USB interface.

The USB I/O-pins are capable of driving the signal at min 3.0V. They are 5V I/O compliant.

The USB interface is powered by VUSB. VUSB must be supplied by USB host in the range 4.5 to 5.25V. The maximum load in VUSB is 10mA.

While the USB connection is active, the SocketModem will not change into SLEEP Mode. To enable switching into SLEEP mode the USB host must bring its USB interface into Suspend state. On incoming calls, the SocketModem will then generate a remote wake up request to resume the USB connection.

Note: The MTSMC-H will not transition to sleep mode.

#### **USB Interface Signal Descriptions**

Signal Name	1/0	Signal Form and Level	Commend
VUSB	I	VINmin = 4.5V VINmax = 5.25V Active current: Iltyp = 2.5mA Ilmax = 10mA Suspend current: Iltyp = 900µA	If lines are unused, keep pins open.
USB_DP USB_DN	I/O I/O	Input sensitivity (Diff),  D+ - D- , VIN = 0.8V to 2.5V: 0.2V min Common mode range (Diff), VIN = 0.8V to 2.5V Receiver threshold (single-end), Vthresholdmin = 0.8V Vthresholdmax = 2.0V Receiver hysteresis, Vhystyp = 200mV	If lines are unused, keep pins open.

**Note:** For more information about the USB interface, see the separate USB Reference Guide available on the Universal Guide CD.

# Part 3 Analog Socket Modems

Chapter 6 - SocketModem (MT9234SMI)

Chapter 7 - SocketModem (MT5692SMI)

Chapter 8 - SocketModem (MT2492SMI)

Chapter 9 - SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)

## Chapter 6 - SocketModem® (MT9234SMI)

#### Introduction

Multi-Tech's SocketModem creates communication-ready devices by integrating data/fax/voice functionality into a single product design. The SocketModem is a space-efficient (1"  $\times$  2.5"), embedded modem that provides V.92/56K communication. The complete, ready-to-integrate modem dramatically reduces development time and costs for system designers.

The MT9234SMI SocketModems are used for integrating data and fax communications. They are single-port modems that integrate the controller, DSP, and DAA in a 1" x 2.5" form factor and communicate to a host controller via an asynchronous serial interface.

#### Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order this Product	
	MT9234SMI			
MT9234SMI-92	V.92 Serial Data, V.34 Fax, 5V	Global		
MT9234SMI-L-92	V.92 Serial Data, V.34 Fax, 3.3V	Global		
MT9234SMI-P-92	V.92 Parallel Data, V.34 Fax, 5V	Global		
MT9234SMI-P-L-92	V.92 Parallel Data, V.34 Fax, 3.3V	Global		
MT9234SMI-HV-92	V.92 Serial Data, V.34 Fax, High Voltage, 5V	Global		
MT9234SMI-P-HV-92	V.92 Parallel Data, V.34 Fax, High Voltage, 5V	Global		
	Telecom Label			
MT9234SMI-LS	MT9234SMI – Global Regulatory Label	Global		
	Developer Kits			
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Global		
MTSMI-P-UDK	SocketModem Parallel Developer Kit	Global		

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

92	V.92/56K data rate
HV	High Voltage 2KV Dielectric Isolation (EN60601)
L	3.3V
Р	Parallel interface
LS	Telecom Label
UDK	Universal Developer Kit

#### Other Product Codes:

The complete product code may end in .Rx. For example, MT9234SMI-92.Rx.

#### AT Commands Reference Guide

 Reference Guides Title and Document Product Number	Fax Commands	Voice Commands
 Guide (S000434x)	See separate Fax Guides: Class 1: <b>S000262x</b> Class 2 <b>S000239x</b>	Included in S000434x

Comment [DAR48]: Removed ITP (Industrial Temperature) because Rick said all 9234SMI are ITP.

<sup>&</sup>quot;R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

#### Technical Specifications

The SocketModem (MT9234SMI) meets the following specifications:

Category         Description           Data Standards         V-92, V-34 enhanced, V-34, V-32bis, V-32, V-22bis, V-22; Bell 212A and Bell 103           Data Format         Serial or 8-bit parallel interface, asynchronous           Character Format         10 bit or 11 bit           Serial/Data Speeds         Serial port data rates adjustable to 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200, and 220400 bps           Client-to-Client Data Rates         33000, 31200, 28800, 26400, 2400, 2400, 1200, 16800, 14400, 12000, 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400, 1200, 0-300 bps           Data Error Correction (ECM)         V-41. V-42 (LAPM, MNP 2-4)           Data Compatibility         V.17. V-29.V-27V-V-21, V-34           Fax Campatibility         V.17. V-29.V-27V-V-21, V-34           Fax Cass         Class 1 8.10 – All builds           Class 2, 2.02.1 – All builds         Class 1 8.10 – All builds           Fax Error Correction Mode         Fax online modes, full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode; command mode; online command mode; v.54 test mode           Weight         0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.)           Operating Temperature         40° to +85° C           Storage Temperature         40° to +85° C           Humidity         20% to 90% (non-condensing)           Operating Woltage         3.3V and 5V           Power Measurements         MT32:345Mill           3.3V	The SocketModem (M 19234SN	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Data Format	Category	Description
Character Format		
Serial/Data Speeds	Data Format	Serial, or 8-bit parallel interface, asynchronous
S7800, 115200, and 230400 tps   Client-to-Client Data Rates   33800, 31200, 28800, 2400, 24000, 21600, 19200, 16800, 14400, 12000, 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400, 1200, 0-300 tps   Data Error Correction (ECM)   V.44; V.42 (LAPM, MNP 2-4)     Data Compression   V.42bis, MNP 5     Fax Compatibility   V.17, V.29V.27V.21, V.34     Fax Class   Class 1 8.10 - All builds     Fax Compression   MH, MR, MMR     Fax Error Correction Mode   ECM     Modes of Operation   Fax online modes; full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode; command mode; online command mode; V.54 test mode     Weight   0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.)     Operating Temperature   40° to 485° C     Storage Temperature   40° to 985° C     Humidity   20% to 90% (non-condensing)     Operating Voltage   3.3V and 5V     Power Measurements   MT92345MI   3.3V     Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.8VDC)     Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC)     Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.5VDC)     Maximum: 136mA (0.74W @ 5.25VDC)     Steep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5.25VDC)     Steep Mo	Character Format	10 bit or 11 bit
Data Error Correction (ECM)   V.44; V.42 (LAPM, MNP 2-4)	Serial/Data Speeds	
Data Compression	Client-to-Client Data Rates	
Fax Compatibility	Data Error Correction (ECM)	V.44; V.42 (LAPM, MNP 2-4)
Fax Compatibility	Data Compression	V.42bis, MNP 5
Fax Class Class 1 8.1.0 – All builds Class 2, 2.0/2.1 – All builds  Fax Compression MH, MR, MMR  Fax Error Correction Mode ECM  Modes of Operation Fax online modes; full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode; command mode; online command mode; v.54 test mode  Weight 0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.)  Operating Temperature 40° to +85° C  Storage Temperature 20% to 90% (non-condensing)  Operating Voltage 3.3V and 5V  Power Measurements MT9234SMI 3.3V  Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.3VDC) Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC) Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (297W to .3135W @ 3.3VDC) 5V  Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2KV r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 CUL 60950	•	,
Class 2, 2.0/2.1 – All builds  Fax Compression MH, MR, MMR  Fax Error Correction Mode ECM  Modes of Operation Fax online modes; full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode; command mode; online command mode; V.54 test mode  Meight 0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.)  Operating Temperature 4-0° to +85° C  Storage Temperature 4-0° to +85° C  Humidity 20% to 90% (non-condensing)  Operating Voltage 3.3V and 5V  Power Measurements MT9234SMI 3.3V  Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.3VDC) Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC) Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (2.9TW to .3135W @ 3.3VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2kV r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer Telephony / TAM  Certifications & Approvals  Face Vertifications or HV Builds UL 60950 EN 6	<u> </u>	,
Fax Error Correction Mode  Modes of Operation Fax online modes; full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode; command mode; online command mode; v.54 test mode  Veight 0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.) Operating Temperature 40° to +85° C Storage Temperature 40° to +85° C Humidity 20% to 90% (non-condensing) Operating Voltage  Power Measurements MT9234SMI 3.3V Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.3VDC) Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC) Sleep Mode: 99mA to 95mA (297W to .3135W @ 3.3VDC) Sleep Mode: 99mA (0.42W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 99mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  1 and MT9234SMI 1.5KV r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 1.5KV r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM Certifications & Approvals  Certifications & Approvals  FC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55022 EN 55022 EN 55022 GB4943, GB9954		
Fax Error Correction Mode  Modes of Operation Fax online modes; full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode; command mode; online command mode; V.54 test mode  Weight 0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.) Operating Temperature -40° to +85° C Storage Temperature -40° to +85° C Humidity 20% to 90% (non-condensing) Operating Voltage Power Measurements MT9234SMI 3.3V Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.3VDC) Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC) Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (297W to .3135W @ 3.3VDC) SV Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 38mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 90mA (0.44W @ 5.5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting) Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5KV r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 1.5KV r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM Certifications & Approvals  Certifications & Approvals  Certifications & Approvals  FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB99554	Fax Compression	·
Fax online modes; full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode; command mode; online command mode; V.54 test mode	•	FCM
Weight		Fax online modes; full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode; command mode;
Operating Temperature	Martine	·
Storage Temperature		, ,,
Humidity   20% to 90% (non-condensing)		
Departing Voltage   3.3V and 5V   MT9234SMI   3.3V   Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.3VDC)   Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC)   Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (.297W to .3135W @ 3.3VDC)   5V   Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC)   Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC)   Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC)   Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC)   Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC)   Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10%   buffer into their power source when determining product load.   -11 dBm (varies by country setting)   -43 dBm under worst-case conditions   MT9234SMI   1.5kV r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC   MT9234SMI   2kV r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC   Sleep Moy TAM		
Power Measurements  MT9234SMI 3.3V Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.3VDC) Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC) Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (.297W to .3135W @ 3.3VDC) 5V Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level 1 1 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity - 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware) 60 characters  Telephony / TAM  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 EN 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254		ζ ,
3.3V Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.3VDC) Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC) Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (.297W to .3135W @ 3.3VDC) 5V Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer 60 characters  Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 cUL 6095		
Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.3VDC) Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC) Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (.297W to .3135W @ 3.8VDC) 5V Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting) Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  DAA Isolation  MT9234SMI 1.5KV r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2KV r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control Command Buffer 60 characters Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60950: EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 G84943, G89254	Power Measurements	MT9234SMI
Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC) Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (.297W to .3135W @ 3.3VDC) 5V Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer 60 characters  Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 CUL 60950		3.3V
Maximum: 136mA (0.49W @ 3.6VDC) Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (.297W to .3135W @ 3.3VDC) 5V Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer 60 characters  Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 CUL 60950		Typical: 122mA (0.40W @ 3.3VDC)
Sleep Mode: 90mA to 95mA (.297W to .3135W @ 3.3VDC) 5V Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer 60 characters  Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 cUL 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EN 60601-1 ENC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254		
Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI -2Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI -2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950 -2K) AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60801-1 ENC Approvals  FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254		
Typical: 125mA (0.62W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -1 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer 60 characters  Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 cUL 60950 cUL 60950 cN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254		
Maximum: 138mA (0.72W @ 5.25VDC) Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  KON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer 60 characters  Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 EN 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254		
Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC) Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer 60 characters  Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 CUL 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.  Transmit Level -11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity -43 dBm under worst-case conditions  DAA Isolation MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC MT9234SMI 2kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer 60 characters  Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950		
Transmit Level - 11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity - 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI		Sleep Mode: 92mA (0.44W @ 5VDC)
Transmit Level - 11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity - 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI		<b>Note:</b> Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10%
Transmit Level - 11 dBm (varies by country setting)  Receiver Sensitivity - 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5KV r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI 2KV r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  Flow Control XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  Command Buffer 60 characters  Telephony / TAM TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254		
DAA Isolation  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  Telephony / TAM  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  cUL 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000  CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60601-1  EN 60601-1  EMC Approvals  FCC Part 15  Canadian EMC  EN 55022  EN 55024  GB4943, GB9254		
DAA Isolation  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  Telephony / TAM  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  CUL 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000  CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60601-1  EN 60601-1  EMC Approvals  FCC Part 15  Canadian EMC  EN 55022  EN 55024  GB4943, GB9254	Transmit Level	- 11 dBm (varies by country setting)
1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC   MT9234SMI   2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC   XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)   60 characters   Telephony / TAM   TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)   Safety Certifications   UL 60950   CUL 60950   EN 60950   EN 60950   EN 60950   CCC   Safety Certifications for HV Builds   UL 60601-1   EMC Approvals   FCC Part 15   Canadian EMC   EN 55022   EN 55024   GB4943, GB9254   GB4943, GB9254		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
MT9234SMI   2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC	Receiver Sensitivity	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions
ZKv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC	Receiver Sensitivity	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions MT9234SMI
Flow Control   XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)	Receiver Sensitivity	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC
Command Buffer   60 characters	Receiver Sensitivity	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI
Telephony / TAM  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC
Safety Certifications	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation Flow Control	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)
UL 60950 cUL 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation Flow Control Command Buffer	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters
cUL 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)
EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications
AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI 2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware) 60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950
CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI 2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware) 60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 cUL 60950
Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  CUL 60950  EN 60950
UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  CUL 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000
EN 60601-1 <b>EMC Approvals</b> FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  cUL 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000  CCC
EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI 2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware) 60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 cUL 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC Safety Certifications for HV Builds
FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  cUL 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000  CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60601-1
Canadian EMC EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  EN 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000  CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60601-1  EN 60601-1
EN 55022 EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000  CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60601-1  EN 60601-1  EMC Approvals
EN 55024 GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  CUL 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000  CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60601-1  EN 60601-1  EMC Approvals  FCC Part 15
GB4943, GB9254	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI 1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI 2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware) 60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications UL 60950 cUL 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Canadian EMC
	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI     1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI     2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware) 60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications     UL 60950     cUL 60950     EN 60950     AS/NZS 60950:2000     CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds     UL 60601-1     EN 60601-1     EN 60601-1  EMC Approvals     FCC Part 15     Canadian EMC     EN 55022
warranty 2 years	Receiver Sensitivity DAA Isolation  Flow Control Command Buffer Telephony / TAM	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  cUL 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000  CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60601-1  EN 60601-1  EMC Approvals  FCC Part 15  Canadian EMC  EN 55022  EN 55024
<u> </u>	Receiver Sensitivity  DAA Isolation  Flow Control  Command Buffer  Telephony / TAM  Certifications & Approvals	- 43 dBm under worst-case conditions  MT9234SMI  1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC  MT9234SMI  2Kv r.m.s. or 2828VDC at working voltage of 125VAC  XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)  60 characters  TAM: S-101 AT+V commands (no CODEC for speakers/microphone interface)  Safety Certifications  UL 60950  EN 60950  AS/NZS 60950:2000  CCC  Safety Certifications for HV Builds  UL 60601-1  EN 60601-1  EMC Approvals  FCC Part 15  Canadian EMC  EN 55022  EN 55024  GB4943, GB9254

Comment [DAR49]: This came from email string involving Curt, Brandon Dalida, Jerome, dated 2/5/09 forwarded by Jerry to me. It covers sleep mode for the 5634SMI-ITP too.

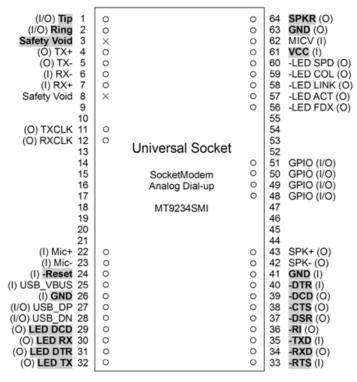
Category	Description
Intelligent Features	Fully AT command compatible
	Leased-line operation
	Sleep mode
	Autodial, redial
	Pulse or tone dial
	Dial pauses
	Auto answer
	Adaptive line probing
	Automatic symbol and carrier frequency during start-up, retrain, and rate
	renegotiations DTMF detection
	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Callback security Distinctive ring
	Voice record and playback
	Call status display, auto-parity and data rate selections
	Keyboard-controlled modem options
	On-screen displays for modem option parameters
	Remote configuration
	DTR dialing
	Phone number storage
	Flash memory for firmware updates
	NVRAM storage for user-defined parameters
	I WYTANI Storage for user-defined parameters

#### SocketModem Pin Out

#### Serial Pin Out

The MT9234SMI SocketModem uses a 20-pin interface to provide an on-board DAA with tip and ring connections, audio circuit for call-progress monitoring, LED driver for call status annunciation, and serial interface.

Note: The bolded, shaded pins are the active MT9234SMI pins.



Top View
Serial SocketModem Pin Out

Comment [DAR50]: Pinout 9234.png filed under rev K graphics

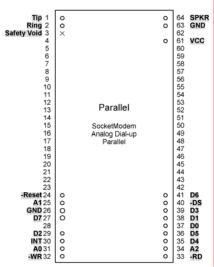
For pin descriptions, see the  ${\it Universal\ Pin\ Out\ Descriptions}$  in Chapter 1.

#### Parallel Pin Out

The parallel configuration is not compatible with the serial universal socket.

The Parallel SocketModem uses a 22-pin interface to provide an on-board DAA with tip and ring connections, audio circuit for call-progress monitoring, and parallel interface.

Note: The bolded, shaded pins are the active MT9234SMI-P (Parallel) pins.



Top View - Parallel SocketModem Pins

Pin Descriptions for a Parallel SocketModem Device

Comment [DAR51]: SM Analog Dial-up Parallel.wmf

Pin#	Signal	1/0	Description
1	Tip	I/O	Telephone Line Interface – TIP
2	Ring	I/O	Telephone Line Interface – RING
24	-RESET	I	Modem Reset (with pull-up). Active low –RESET input resets the SocketModem logic and
			returns AT command set to original factory defaults or to NVRAM 'stored values' . The modem
			is ready to accept commands within 6.5 seconds of power-on or reset. Reset must be
			asserted for a minimum of 30ms.
25	A1	I	Host Bus Address Line 1
26	DGND	GND	Digital Ground
27	D7	0	Host Bus Data Line 7
29	D2	0	Host Bus Data Line 2
30	INT	0	Host Bus Interrupt Line. INT output is set high when the receiver error flag, receiver data
			available, transmitter holding register empty, or modem status interrupt have an active high
			condition. INT is reset low upon the appropriate interrupt service or master reset operation.
31	A0	I	Host Bus Address Line 0.
32	–WR	1	Host Bus WriteWR is an active low, write control input. When -DS is low, -WR low
			allows the host to write data or control words into a selected modem register.
33	–RD	I	Host Bus ReadRD is an active low, read control input. When -DS is low, -RD low allows
			the host to read status information or data from a selected modem register.
34	A2	I	Host Bus Address Line 2
35	D4	0	Host Bus Data Line 4
36	D5	0	Host Bus Data Line 5
37	D0	0	Host Bus Data Line 0
38	D1	0	Host Bus Data Line 1
39	D3	0	Host Bus Data Line 3
40	-DS	I	Host Bus Device SelectDS input low enables the modem for read or write.
41	D6	0	Host Bus Data Line 6
61	VCC	PWR	+5 V or 3.3 V Supply (depends upon model).
63	AGND	GND	Analog Ground. This is tied common with DGND on the SocketModem. To minimize
L			potential ground noise issues, connect audio circuit return to AGND.
64	SPKR	0	Speaker Output. SPKR is a single ended-output. It is tied to the CODEC through a series
			6.8K resistor and .1uf cap.

#### DC Electrical Characteristics

#### 5V Serial - Standard (SMI) and Medical Device (SMI-HV) Build Options

#### 5VDC Characteristics (VDD = 5V ± 0.25V) VDDMAX = 5.25V

Digital Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33)	Min 2.52V	Max .9V	
-Reset (24)	Input High	Input Low	
	Min 2.52V	Max 0.3V	
Digital Outputs	Output	Output Low	Current Drive
-DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37),	High	Max 0.4V	2mA
-RI (36), -RXD (34)	Min 2.3V		
Digital Input Capacitance			5 pF

#### 5V Parallel - Standard (SMI) and Medical Device (SMI-HV) Build Options

#### 5VDC Characteristics (VDD = 5V ± 0.25V) VDDMAX = 5.25V

Digital Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DS (40)	Min 2.52V	Max 0.9V	
Digital Inputs (hysteresis input buffer)	Input High	Input Low	
A0 (31), A1 (25), A2 (34),	Min 2.52V	Max 0.9V	
–WR (32), –RD (33)			
Digital Input / Output	Input High	Input Low	
Output buffer can source 12 mA at 0.4 V	Min 2.52V	Max 0.9V	
DO (37), D1 (38), D2 (29), D3 (39), D4 (35), D5			
(36), D6 (41), D7 (27)			
Digital Output	Output High	Output Low	Current Drive
INT (30)	Min 2.3V	Max 0.4V	2mA
Digital Input Capacitance			5 pF

#### 3.3V Serial – Industrial Temperature (SMI-L) Build Option

#### 3.3VDC Characteristics (VDD = $3.3V \pm 0.3V$ ) vddmax = 3.6V

Digital Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33)	Min 2.52V	Max 0.9V	
-Reset (24)	Input High	Input Low	
	Min 2.52V	Max 0.3V	
Digital Outputs   -DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36),   -RXD (34)	Output High Min. 2.3V	Output Low Max 0.4V	Current Drive 2mA
Digital Input Capacitance			5 pF

#### 3.3V Parallel – Industrial Temperature (SMI-L) Build Options

#### 3.3VDC Characteristics (VDD = 3.3V $\pm$ 0.3V) VDDMAX = 3.6V

Digital Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DS (40)	Min 2.52V	Max 0.9V	
Digital Inputs (hysteresis input buffer)	Input High	Input Low	
A0 (31), A1 (25), A2 (34), -WR (32), -RD (33)	Min 2.52V	Max 0.9V	
Digital Input/Output	Input High	Input Low	
Output buffer can source 12 mA at 0.4 V	Min 2.52V	Max 0.9V	
DO (37), D1 (38), D2 (29), D3 (39), D4 (35), D5 (36),			
D6 (41), D7 (27)			
Digital Output	Output High	Output Low	Current Drive
INT (30)	Min 2.3V	Max 0.4V	2mA
Digital Input Capacitance			5 pF

#### Parallel Timing Requirements

#### **Timing Requirements for Parallel Write**

Parameter	Min	Max	Unit
–DS to –WR Setup (low to low)	10	-	ns
A0, A1, A2 to –WR Setup (valid to low)	15	-	ns
–WR Pulse Width (low to high)	40	-	ns
D0–D7 to –WR Setup (valid to high)	30	-	ns
–WR to –DS hold (high to high)	0	-	ns
–WR to A0–A2 Hold (high to invalid)	0	-	ns
–WR to D0–D7 Hold (high to invalid)	0	-	ns
–WR interaccess (high to low)			
Non-MIMIC Accesses	10	-	ns
MIMIC Accesses	110	-	ns

#### Timing Requirements for Parallel Read

Parameter	Min	Max	Unit
–DS to –RD Setup (low to low)	10	-	ns
A0, A1, A2 to –RD Setup (valid to low)	15	-	ns
-RD Pulse Width (low to high)	40	-	ns
–RD to –DS hold (high to high)	0	-	ns
–RD to A0–A2 Hold (high to invalid)	0	-	ns
–WR interaccess (high to low)			
Non-MIMIC Accesses	10	-	ns
MIMIC Accesses	110	-	ns

#### SocketModem Parallel Interface Internal Registers

The SocketModem parallel interface is a mimic of a 16C550A UART. It is similar to the MIMIC interface used in the Zilog Z80189. The SocketModem mimic (MMM) takes advantage of this standard interface while replacing the serial to parallel data transfer with a less complicated parallel to parallel data transfer.

The MMM interface controls an 8-bit parallel data transfer which is typically interrupt driven. Interrupts usually indicate one or both of two conditions: (1) the receive (RX) FIFO has either reached a trigger level or time-out condition and needs to be emptied and/or (2) the transmit (TX) FIFO is empty and waiting for more data from the Host. An interrupt can also be triggered by a change in the modem status register (i.e., loss of carrier) or by the occurrence of errors in the line status register (overrun, parity, framing, break detect).

In addition to the receive and transmit FIFOs, there are twelve other control/status registers called the MMM register set which can be accessed through this interface.

#### Overview

#### SocketModem MIMIC (MMM) Operation

Data flow through MMM is bi-directional. Simultaneously, data can flow from the host through the transmit FIFO to the SocketModem controller, and data can flow from SocketModem controller through the receive FIFO to the Host. In the receive path, 8-bit data is asynchronously received (from the SocketModem controller) by the receive FIFO where it is stored along with associated three error bits. The error bits must arrive (via a SocketModem controller I/O write to MMM shadow line status register) prior to receiving the actual data bits. The error bits are then temporarily stored so they may be written, with associated data bits, to the 11-bit wide RX FIFO.

After every data write, the RX FIFO write pointer is incremented. RX FIFO trigger levels, data ready signal, and time-out counter are checked to see if a Host-interrupt needs to be sent. The data ready signal will be activated and MMM sits poised to accept another data word.

We highly recommend the host should read the MMM IIR register to determine the type of interrupt. Then it might check bit 7 of the LSR to see if there are any errors in the data currently residing in the receive FIFO. Finally, it will (1) alternately read a data word through the RX FIFO read pointer and the error bits via the MMM LSR until the FIFO is empty, or (2) read successive data words (knowing there were no errors in the FIFO) until the trigger count is met.

A similar sequence occurs when data flows in the other direction (from host through transmit FIFO), except there is no error bit manipulation/checking involved.

#### FIFO Operation

The 16-byte transmit and receive data FIFOs are enabled by the FIFO Control Register (FCR) bit-0. You can set the receive trigger level via FCR bits 6/7. The receiver FIFO section includes a time-out function to ensure data is delivered to the external host. An interrupt is generated whenever the Receive Holding Register (RHR) has not been read following the loading of a character or the receive trigger level has been reached.

#### Receive (RX) FIFO

The RX FIFO can be configured to be 16 words deep and 11 bits wide. Each word in the RX FIFO consists of 8 data bits and 3 error bits. The RX block of the MMM contains read and write pointers and status flag circuitry that need only to be presented with data (for input), reset, read/write control signals, and read/write clock signals. The RX block of the MMM internally manages the FIFO register file and pointers, and it provides simultaneous read/write capability (no contention problems).

The RX block of the MMM provides data (for output), FIFO full flag, FIFO empty flag, and an almost full flag which uses an associated predefined trigger level (obtained from the MMM FCR control register) to signal when the trigger level has been met. Four possible trigger levels may be selected by programming bits 6-7 of the FCR control register.

A typical (interrupt driven) write to the RX block is a two-step process. The MMM micro-controller must first write the 3 error bits to a shadow MMM LSR status register. Next, the micro-controller writes the data to the RX FIFO and during this write operation, the 3 error bits are directly loaded from the LSR shadow register into the bits 8-10 of the selected (11 bit-wide) FIFO register. These error bits represent the parity error, framing error, and break interrupt signals associated with each data work transmission into the receive FIFO. When the receive FIFO is read, these error bits are loaded directly into bits 2-4 of the MMM LSR register.

A2	A1	A0	Register Name	Register Description	Host Access
0	0	0	RBR	Receive Buffer (RX FIFO)	DLAB = 0 R only
0	0	0	THR	Transmit Holding (TX FIFO)	DLAB = 0 W only
0	0	1	IER	Interrupt Enable	DLAB = 0 R/W
0	1	0	IIR	Interrupt Identification	DLAB = X R only
0	1	0	FCR	FIFO Control	DLAB = X W only
0	1	1	LCR	Line Control	DLAB = X R/W
1	0	0	MCR	Modem Control	DLAB = 0 R/W
1	0	1	LSR	Line Status	DLAB = X R only
1	1	0	MSR	Modem Status	DLAB = X R only
1	1	1	SCR	Scratch pad	DLAB = 0 R/W
0	0	0	DLL	LSB of Divisor Latch	DLAB = 1 R/W
0	0	1	DLM	MSB of Divisor Latch	DLAB = 1 R/W
1	1	1	DLX	Divisor Latch	DLAB = 1 R/W
1	0	0	MCX	Status/Control	DLAB = 1 R/W

Note 1\* The General Register set is accessible only when DS is a logic 0.

Note 2\* The Baud Rate register set is accessible only when DS is a logic 0 and LCR bit-7 is a logic 1.

#### Time Out Interrupts

The interrupts are enabled by IER bits 0-3. Care must be taken when handling these interrupts. Following a reset the transmitter interrupt is enabled, the SocketModem will issue an interrupt to indicate that transmit holding register is empty. This interrupt must be serviced prior to continuing operations.

The LSR register provides the current singular highest priority interrupt only. A condition can exist where a higher priority interrupt may mask the lower priority interrupt(s). Only after servicing the higher pending interrupt will the lower priority interrupt(s) be reflected in the status register. Servicing the interrupt without investigating further interrupt conditions can result in data errors. When two interrupt conditions have the same priority, it is important to service these interrupts correctly.

Receive Data Ready and Receive Time Out have the same interrupt priority (when enabled by IER bit-3). The receiver issues an interrupt after the number of characters received have reached the programmed trigger level. In this case the MMM FIFO may hold more characters than the programmed trigger level. Following the removal of a data byte, the user should recheck LSR bit-0 for additional characters. A Receive Time Out will not occur if the receive FIFO is empty. The time out counter is reset at the center of each stop bit received or each time the receive holding register (RHR) is read.

**Register Functional Definitions**The following table delineates the assigned bit functions for the twelve internal registers. The assigned bit functions are more fully defined in the following paragraphs.

#### **Internal Registers**

A2	2 A1	A0	Register [Default] *3	BIT-7	BIT-6	BIT-5	BIT-4	BIT-3	BIT-2	BIT-1	BIT-0
Ge	ener	al Re	gister Set: Note	1*							
0	0	0	RBR [XX]	Bit-7	Bit-6	Bit-5	Bit-4	Bit-3	Bit-2	Bit-1	Bit-0
0	0	0	THR [XX]	Bit-7	Bit-6	Bit-5	Bit-4	Bit-3	Bit-2	Bit-1	Bit-0
0	0	1	IER [00]	0	0	0	0	Modem Status Interrupt	Receive Line Status interrupt	Transmit Holding Register interrupt	Receive Holding Register interrupt
0	1	0	IIR [XX]	FIFO enable	FIFO enable	0	0	Interrupt ID	Interrupt ID	Interrupt ID	Interrupt Pending
0	1	0	FCR [00]	RX Trigger (MSB)	RX trigger (LSB)	Detect change in FCR	TX FIFO overrun bit	DMA mode select	XMIT FIFO reset	RCVR FIFO reset	FIFO enable
0	1	1	LCR [00]	Divisor latch access (DLAB)	Set break	Stick parity	Even parity	Parity enable	0	Word length bit- 1	Word length bit-0
1	0	0	MCR [00]	0	0	0	Loop back	INT enable	OUT 1	-RTS	-DTR
1	0	1	LSR [60]	RX FIFO data error	TX empty THR empty	THR Empty	Break interrupt	Framing error	Parity error	Overrun error	Receive data ready
1	1	0	MSR [X0]	CD	RI	DSR	CTS	Delta -CD	Delta -RI	Delta -DSR	Delta -CTS
1	1	1	SCR [FF]	Bit-7	Bit-6	Bit-5	Bit-4	Bit-3	Bit-2	Bit-1	Bit-0
Sp			gister Set: Note								
0	0	0	DLL [00]	Bit-7	Bit-6	Bit-5	Bit-4	Bit-3	Bit-2	Bit-1	Bit-0
0	0	1	DLM [00]	Bit-7	Bit-6	Bit-5	Bit-4	Bit-3	Bit-2	Bit-1	Bit-0

Note: 1\* The General Register set is accessible only when DS is a logic 0.

2\* The Baud Rate register set is accessible only when DS is a logic 0 and LCR bit-7 is a logic 1.

3\* The value between the square brackets represents the register's initialized HEX value, X = N/A.

#### RBR - Receive Buffer (RX FIFO)

All eight bits are used for receive channel data (host read/data in; host write/data out). The three error bits per byte are copied into bits 2, 3, and 4 of the LSR during each host I/O read; therefore, they are available for monitoring on a per-byte basis.

#### THR – Transmit Holding Register (TX FIFO)

All eight bits are used for transmit channel data (host write/data out; host read/data in).

#### IER - Interrupt Enable

- Bits 4-7: Reserved and will always read 0.
- Bits 0-3: Set by host software only and cleared by software control or host reset.
- **Bit 3:** Enables modem status IRQ. If bits 0–3 of the MSR are set and this bit is set to 1 (enabled), a host interrupt is generated.
- **Bit 2:** Enables receive line status IRQ. If bits 1–4 (overrun, parity, framing, break errors) of the LSR are set and this bit is set to a logic 1, a host interrupt is generated.
- **Bit 1:** Enables transmit holding register IRQ. If bit 5 (transmit holding register empty) of the LSR is set and this bit is set to a 1, a host interrupt is generated.
- **Bit 0:** Enables received data available IRQ. If bit 0 (data ready) of the LSR is set and this bit is set to a 1, a host interrupt is generated.

#### IIR - Interrupt Identification (Read Only)

- Bits 6–7: (FIFO enabled bits). These bits will read a 1 if FIFO mode is enabled and the 16450 enable bit is 0 (no force of 16450 mode).
- Bits 4-5: Reserved and always read a 0.
- Bits 1-3: Interrupt ID bits.
- Bit 0: Interrupt pending. If logic 0 (in default mode), an interrupt is pending.

When the host accesses IIR, the contents of the register are frozen. Any new interrupts will be recorded, but not acknowledged during the IIR access. This requires buffering bits (0–3, 6–7) during IIR reads.

#### **Interrupt Sources and Reset Control Table**

Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Priority	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Reset Control
0	1	1	Highest	Overrun, parity, framing, error or break detect bits set by SocketModem Controller	Reading the LSR
0	1	0	2 <sup>nd</sup>	Received data trigger level	RX FIFO drops below trigger level
1	1	0	2 <sup>nd</sup>	Receiver time-out with data in RX FIFO	Read RX FIFO
0	0	1	3 <sup>rd</sup>	TX holding register empty	Writing to TX holding register or reading IIR when TX holding register is source of error
0	0	0	4 <sup>th</sup>	MODEM status: CTS, DSR, RI or DCD	Reading the MSR

#### FCR - FIFO Control

Bits 6-7: Used to determine RX FIFO trigger levels.

Bit 5: Used to detect a change in the FCR.

Bit 4: TX FIFO overrun bit.

**Bit 3:** DMA mode select. If bit 3 is a 0, the 16450 mode is enabled which does only single-byte transfers. When bit 3 is a 1, it enables a multiple byte (FIFO mode) data transfer.

Bit 2: TX FIFO reset. This will cause TX FIFO pointer logic to be reset (any data in TX FIFO will be lost). This bit is self clearing; however, a shadow bit exists that is cleared only when read by the host, thus allowing the host to monitor a FIFO reset.

**Bit 1:** RX FIFO reset. This will cause RX FIFO pointer logic to be reset (any data in RX FIFO will be lost). This bit is self clearing; however, a shadow bit exists that is cleared only when read by the host, thus allowing the host to monitor a FIFO reset.

**Bit 0:** FIFO enable. The host writes this bit to logic 1 to put the block in FIFO mode. This bit must be a 1 when writing other bits in this register or they will not be programmed. When this bit changes state, any data in the FIFOs or the RBR and THR registers will be lost and any pending interrupts are cleared.

Bit 7	Bit 6	16 Deep FIFO Trigger Levels (# of bytes) Default
0	0	1
0	1	4
1	0	8
1	1	14

#### LCR - Line Control

Bit 7: Divisor latch access bit. This bit allows the host, access to the divisor latch. Under normal circumstances, the bit is set to 0 (provides access to the RX and TX FIFOs at address 0). If the

bit is set to 1, access to transmitter, receiver, interrupt enable, and modem control registers is disabled. In this case, when an access is made to address 0, the divisor latch least (DLL) significant byte is accessed. Address 1 accesses the most significant byte (DLM). Address 7 accesses the DLX divisor latch register. Address 4 accesses the MCX status/control register.

Bit 6: Used to denote a host-generated set break condition.

Bits 0,1,3,4,5: Used only in parity bit generation for the 7 bit data byte case. Bits 0 and 1 are used for word length select (b0 = 0 and b1 = 1 is used for 7 bit data). Bit 3 is parity enable. Bit 4 is even parity select. Bit 5 is stick parity.

#### MCR - Modem Control

Bits 5–7: Reserved, and will always be 0.

Bit 4: Used for loopback. When a 1, bits 0–3 of the MCR are reflected in modem status register (MSR)

as follows: RI <= OUT1, DCD <= OUT2, DSR <= DTR, CTS <= RTS. Emulation of loopback feature of 16550 UART must be done by the host except for the above conditions. Also, when this bit is set, it allows for data loop back. This means the host can write a data word to the TX and immediately read back the same data word from the RX (in a manner similar to the 16550A).

Bit 3: Controls the signal used to 3-state the host interrupt. If 0, then an active-low L33xV output will be

set to 0, and this signal will be used to 3-state the host interrupt output pin.

Bits 0–2: Used during LOOP function.

Bit 2: OUT1.

Bit 1: Request to Send (RTS).

Bit 0: Data terminal ready (DTR).

#### LSR - Line Status

- **Bit 7:** Error in RX FIFO. This bit is always set to 1 if at least one data byte in the RX FIFO has an error. This will clear when there are no more errors in the RX FIFO.
- Bit 6: Transmitter empty. This bit is the same as LSR bit 5 (THRE) in MMM
- Bit 5: Transmitter holding register empty. This bit is set to 1 when either the transmitter holding register has been read (emptied) by the micro-controller (16450 mode) or the TX FIFO is empty (16550 mode). This bit is set to 0 when either the THR or the TX FIFO becomes not empty in 16450 mode. In 16550 mode, it is set to 0 only after the trigger level has been met since the last occurrence of TX FIFO empty. If the transmitter timer is enabled, a shadow bit exists which delays the timer setting this bit to 1. When reading this bit, the micro-controller will not see the delay. Both shadow and register bits are cleared when the host writes to the THR or TX FIFO in 16450 mode. The trigger level must be reached to clear the bit in 16550 (FIFO) mode.
- Bits 2–4: Used for parity error, framing error, and break detect. These bits are written, indirectly, by the micro-controller as follows: The bits are first written to the shadow bit locations when the micro-controller write accesses the LSR. When the next character is written to the receive buffer (RBR) or the RX FIFO, the data in the shadow bits is then copied to the RBR (16450 mode) or RX FIFO (16550 mode). In FIFO mode, bits become available to the host when the data byte associated with the bits is next to be read. In FIFO mode, with successive reads of the receiver, the status bits will be set if an error occurs on any byte. Once the micro-controller writes to the RBR or RX FIFO, the shadow bits are auto cleared. The register bits are updated with each host read.
- Bit 1: Overrun error. This bit is set if the micro-controller makes a second write to RBR before the host reads data in the buffer (16450 mode) or with a full RX FIFO (16550 mode). No data will be transferred to the RX FIFO under these circumstances. This bit is reset when the host reads the LSR.
- Bit 0: Data ready bit. This bit is set to 1 when received data is available, either in the RX FIFO (16550 mode) or the RBR (16450 mode). This bit is set immediately upon the micro-controller writing data to the RBR or FIFO if the receive timer is not enabled, but it is delayed by the timer interval if the receive timer is enabled. For micro-controller read access, a shadow bit exists so that the micro-controller does not see the delay that the host sees. Both bits are cleared to logic 0 immediately upon reading all data in either RBR or RX FIFO.

#### MSR - Modem Status

Bits 4 through 7 of the MSR can also take on the MCR bits 0 through 3 value when in MCR loop mode (i.e. when MCR b4 = 1). The transfer of bits in loop back has a null modem twist (i.e. MCR b0 goes to MSR b5 and MCR b1goes to MSR b4).

- Bit 7: Data carrier detect (DCD) bit.

  Bit 6: Ring indicator (RI) bit.

  Bit 5: Data set ready (DSR) bit.

  Bit 4: Clear to send (CTS) bit.
- **Bit 3:** Delta data carrier detect pin. This bit is set to a 1 whenever the data carrier detect bit changes state. It is reset when the host reads the modem status register.
- **Bit 2:** Trailing edge ring indicator bit. This bit is set to 1 on the falling edge of the ring indicator bit. It is reset when the host reads the modem status register.
- **Bit 1:** Delta data set ready bit. This bit is set to 1 whenever the data set ready changes state. It is reset when the host reads the modem status register.
- **Bit 0:** Delta clear to send bit. This bit is a one whenever the clear to send bit changes state. It is reset when the host reads the modern status register.

#### SCR - Scratch

The host programmer uses this register for temporary data storage.

## DLL - Divisor Latch (LSByte)

This register contains low-order byte for the 16-bit clock divider. It is kept to maintain register set compatibility with the 16C550A interface. However, it is not used for clock generation since MMM does not require the generation of a real baud clock.

### DLM - Divisor Latch (MSByte)

This register contains high-order byte for the 16-bit clock divider. It is kept to maintain register set compatibility with the 16C550A interface. However, it is not used for clock generation, since MMM does not require the generation of a real baud clock.

Programming the Baud Rate Generator Registers DLM (MSB) and DLL (LSB) provides a user capability for selecting the desired final baud rate. The example in the Table below shows the selectable baud rates available when using a 1.8432 MHz external clock input.

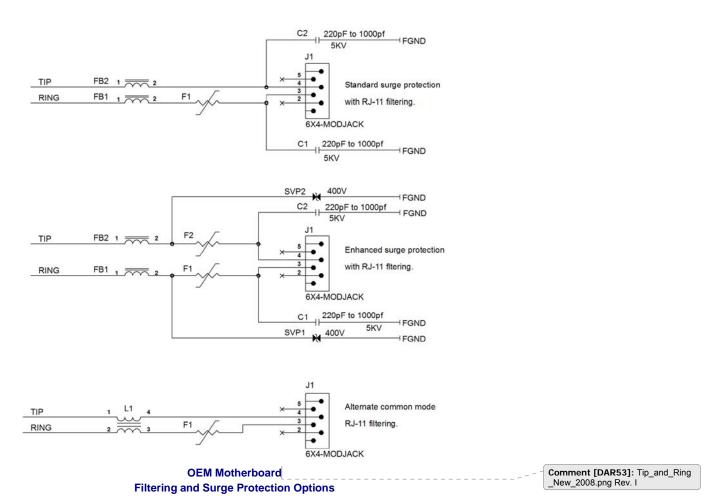
#### **BAUD RATE GENERATOR PROGRAMMING TABLE**

Baud	16 x Clock Divisor (Decimal)	DLM Value (HEX)	DLL Value (HEX)
Rate			
110	1047	04	17
300	384	01	80
600	192	00	C0
1200	96	00	60
2400	48	00	30
4800	24	00	18
9600	12	00	0C
19.2K	6	00	06
38.4K	3	00	03
57.6K	2	00	02
115.2K	1	00	01

## Application Notes

## Tip and Ring Interface

Comment [DAR52]: This is the new Tip and Ring done 2008



See Design Considerations and Recommended Parts in Chapter 1.

## Recommended Uses for Filtering Options

- Enhanced Surge Protection with RJ-11 Filtering
  Use this option when additional lightning protection may be needed.
- Alternate Common Mode with RJ-11 Filtering
  Use this option when your design has common mode emission issues.

## Chapter 7 - SocketModem® (MT5692SMI)

#### Introduction

This chapter covers the SocketModem® MT5692SMI and its various builds: serial, parallel, voice. The serial build option can be ordered with or without IP functionality.

The Multi-Tech SocketModem creates communication-ready devices by integrating data/fax/voice functionality into a single product design. The SocketModem is a space-efficient (1" × 2.5"), embedded modem that provides V.92 or V.34/33.6K data communication. The complete, ready-to-integrate modem dramatically reduces development time and costs for system designers.

The MT5692SMI SocketModem is a standard 64-pin modem used for integrating data communications.

- It is a single-port modem that integrates the controller, DSP, and DAA in a 1" x 2.5" form factor and communicates to a
  host controller via an asynchronous serial interface.
- It is available with an 8-bit parallel interface.

The SocketModem IP, MT5692SMI-IP, embedded modem creates Internet-ready devices by integrating modem functionality and a complete TCP/IP protocol stack into a single, universal socket design. This embedded modem sends and receives data via e-mail, HTTP, or socket interfaces. It also complies with telecom requirements globally allowing for worldwide shipments.

## Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order this Product					
MT5692SMI								
Serial Builds								
MT5692SMI-34	V.34 Serial Data / V.17 Fax, 5V	Global						
MT5692SMI-L-34	V.34 Serial Data / V.17 Fax, 3.3V	Global						
MT5692SMI-92	V.92 Serial Data / V.17 Fax, 5V	Global						
MT5692SMI-L-92	V.92 Serial Data / V.17 Fax, 3.3V	Global						
MT5692SMI-X-L-92	V.92 Serial Data / V.17 Fax, 3.3V (excludes LED pins)	Global						
IP Builds								
MT5692SMI-IP-92	V.92 Serial Data-Only 5V	Global						
MT5692SMI-IP-L-92	V.92 Serial Data-Only, 3.3V	Global						
Voice Builds								
MT5692SMI-V-34	V.34 Serial Data / V.17 Fax / Voice, 5V	Global						
MT5692SMI-V-92	V.92 Serial Data / V.17 Fax / Voice, 5V	Global						
Parallel Builds								
MT5692SMI-P-34	V.34 Parallel Data / V.17 Fax, 5V	Global						
MT5692SMI-P-L-34	V.34 Parallel Data / V.17, 3.3V	Global						
MT5692SMI-P-92	V.92 Parallel Data / V.17 Fax, 5V	Global						
MT5692SMI-P-L-92	V.92 Parallel Data / V.17 Fax, 3.3V	Global						
	Developer Kits							
MTSMI-UDK	SocketModem Serial Developer Kit	Global						
MTSMI-P-UDK	SocketModem Parallel Developer Kit	Global						

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Above Table:

34 V.34 data rate

92 V.92/56K data rate

L 3.3V power input (default is 5V)

P Parallel interface (default is serial)

V Speakerphone I/O

X Excludes LED pins

IP Embedded Universal IP Stack

**UDK** Universal Developer Kit

#### **Other Product Codes:**

The complete product code may end in .Rx. For example, MT5692SMI-V-34.Rx.

"R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

## AT Commands Reference Guide

Product	Reference Guides Title and Document Product	Fax Commands	Voice Commands
	Number		
SocketModem	MT5692SMI AT Commands Reference Guide	Included in S000468x	Included in S000468x
(MT5692SMI)	(S000468x)		
SocketModem	Universal IP AT Commands Reference Guide	NA	NA
(MT5692SMI-IP)	(S000457x)		

## Technical Specifications

### MT5692SMI, MT5692SMI-V, MT5692SMI-P, MT5692SMI-IP

The MT5692SMI, MT5692SMI-V, MT5692SMI-P, and MT5692SMI-IP SocketModems meet the following specifications:

THE WITSOSZOWII, WITSOSZO	MI-V, MI 3092SMI-P, and MI 3092SMI-IP SocketWoderns meet the following specifications.
Category	Description
Data Standards	V.92, V.34, V.32bis, V.32, V.23, V.23 half-duplex, V.23 reverse, V.22bis, V.22bis Fast Connect, V.22, V.21, Bell 212A/Bell 103, V.29 FastPOS, V.80 Synchronous Access Mode (V.80 not for IP build)
Data Format	All Builds: Serial, asynchronous Parallel Build: 8-bit parallel interface
Character Format	10 bit
Serial/Data Speeds	All Builds Except IP: Supports DTE speeds up to 230.4K bps, autobaud up to 115.2K bps
Contain Data Opeodo	For IP Build: Supports DTE speeds up to 921.6K bps.
Client-to-Client Data Rates	33600, 31200, 28800, 26400, 24000, 21600, 19200, 16800, 14400, 12000, 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400, 1200, 0-300 bps
Data Error Correction	V.42 LAPM and MNP 2–4
Data Compression	V.44, V.42bis, MNP 5
Fax Compatibility	All Builds Except IP: V.17, V.29, V.27ter, V.21 channel 2
Fax Class	All Builds Except IP: Class 1, Class 1.0
Modes of Operation	Full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode, command mode, online command mode
Size	2.54" (64.541 mm) x 1.045" (26.543 mm)
Weight	0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.)
Operating Temperature	-40° to +85° C
Storage Temperature	-40° to +85° C
Humidity	20% to 90% (non-condensing)
Operating Voltage	3.3V or 5V
	Note: Voice modules are available with 5V only
Transmit Level	-12 dBm (varies by country)
Receiver Sensitivity	-43 dBm under worst-case conditions
DAA Isolation	1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC
Flow Control	All Builds Except IP: XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)
Command Buffer	60 characters
Telephony/TAM	V.253 commands 8 kHz sample rate Concurrent DTMF, distinctive ring, and "Bell Core Type 1" Caller ID 8-bit μ-law and A-law PCM coding Supports PCM Encoding:
	2-bit and 4-bit ADPCM, 8-bit and 16-bit linear PCM, and 4-bit IMA coding
Compliance	EMC Compliance FCC Part 15 (Class B) ICES-003 (Class B) EN 55024 Safety Compliance UL 60950-1 CUL 60950-1 EN 60950-1 AS/NZS 60950:2000 Telecom 47 CFR Part 68 CS-03 R&TTE A-Tick (Other countries included per the Modem Globalization Guide)
	2 years

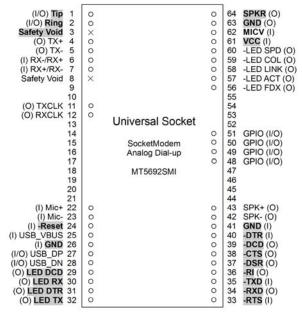
Comment [DAR54]: 115.2K bps came from Mike L. 7/14/09

Comment [DAR55]: 921.6K bps came from Mike L. 7/14/09

Category	Description
Intelligent Features	V.22bis Fast Connect
	V.29 FastPOS
	Voice send and receive functions
	LED pin output option
	DTMF detection and distinctive ring
	Audio circuit outputs for audio call-progress monitoring
	Three-number storage for automatic dialing capabilities and non-volatile memory (NoVRAM) to store user profiles
	Speaker interface for call progress monitoring
	Full-duplex data transmission over dial-up lines
	Line quality monitoring and retrain
	Line protection circuitry included
	Auto-dial, redial, and auto-answer, pulse or tone dial, call status display
	Extension pickup detection
	Remote hang-up detection
	Line-in-use detection
	Digital PBX detection and protection
	60-character command line buffering
	Auto-parity and data rate selections
	AT command compatibility
	Global approvals with a single SocketModem design
	Intelligent DAA technology detects line status
	Supports speakerphone I/O
	Supports "Bell Core Type 1" Caller ID Modem mode bypasses the IP features
	Flash memory to update firmware with the latest enhancements
	For IP Build Only:
	Internet Protocols Supported: Dial-in PPP, DNS, FTP, ICMP,IP, LCP, PPP, SMTP,
	SNTP, TCP, UDP Socket
	Dial-in PPP using remote dial-up networking
	Authentication Protocols: CHAP, Dial-up Script, PAP
	Binary Base 64 encoding and MIME email formats
·	2) 2000 0. 0ooding and minic official formation

#### Pin Outs

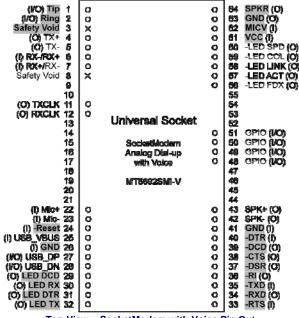
### Serial Build (MT5692SMI and MT5692SMI-IP)



Top View -- SocketModem Pin Out

For pin descriptions, see the Universal Pin Out Description in Chapter 1.

### Serial with Voice Build (MT5692SMI-V)



Top View – SocketModem with Voice Pin Out

For pin descriptions, see the Universal Pin Out Description in Chapter 1.

## Parallel Build (MT5692SMI-P)

(I/O) Tip 1	0		0	64	SPKR (O)
(I/O) Ring 2	0		0	63	GND (O)
Safety Void 3	×		a	62	MICV (I)
(O) TX+ 4	0		0	61	VCC (I)
(O) TX-5	0		0	60	-LED SPD (O)
(I) RX-/RX+ 6	0		0	59	-LED COL (O)
(i) RX+/RX- 7	O		G	58	-LED LINK (O
Safety Void 8	×		0	57	-LED ACT (O)
. 9	1		O	56	-LED FDX (Q)
10	1			55	
(O) TXCLK 11	0			54	
(O) RXCLK 12	0	11-5		53	
13	1	Universal Socket		62	
14	1		0	51	GPIO (I/O)
15	1	SocketModem	0	50	GPIO (I/O)
16	1	Analog Dial-up	0	49	GPIO (VO)
17	1		0	48	GPIO (I/O)
18	1	Parallel Build		47	
19	1			46	
20	1	MT5692SMI-P		45	
21	1			44	
(I) Mic+ 22	0		O	43	SPK+ (O)
(f) Mic- 23	0		0	42	SPK- (O)
(I) -Reset 24	0		0	41	GND (I)
(I) USB_VBUS 25	0		0	40	-DTR (i)
(i) GND 26	0		O	39	-DCD (O)
(I/O) USB_DP 27	0		0	36	-CTS (O)
(I/O) USB_DN 28	0		0	37	-DSR (O)
(O) LED DCD 29	0		0	36	-RI (O)
(O) LED RX 30	0		O	35	-TXD (I)
(O) LED DTR 31	0		0	34	-RXD (O)
(O) LED TX 32	0		0	33	-RTS (I)

**Top View – SocketModern with Parallel Build Pin Out**For pin descriptions, see the Universal Pin Out Description in Chapter 1.

## **Parallel Pin Descriptions**

Pin#	Signal	In Out	Description
"	Name	Туре	2 South Priori
1	Tip	I/O	Telephone Line Interface – TIP
2	Ring	I/O	Telephone Line Interface – RING
24	-RESET	I	Modem Reset (CMOS input with pull-up). The active low –RESET input resets the SocketModem logic and returns the AT command set to the original factory default values or to "stored values" in NVRAM.  The modem is ready to accept commands within 6.5 seconds of power-on or reset.
25	A1		Host Bus Address Line 1
26	DGND	GND	Digital Ground
27	D7	0	Host Bus Data Line 7
29	D2	0	Host Bus Data Line 2
30	INT	0	Host Bus Interrupt Line (Active High, Resets on Low)
31	A0	_	Host Bus Address Line 0
32	-WR	I	Host Bus Write. When low, allows host to write to SocketModem.
33	–RD		Host Bus Read. When low, allows host to read from SocketModem.
34	A2	I	Host Bus Address Line 2
35	D4	0	Host Bus Data Line 4
36	D5	0	Host Bus Data Line 5
37	D0	0	Host Bus Data Line 0
38	D1	0	Host Bus Data Line 1
39	D3	0	Host Bus Data Line 3

Comment [DAR56]: This sentence removed from reset by Dustin 8/24/09 Reset must be asserted for a minimum of 15ms.

#### **Parallel Pin Descriptions Continued**

Pin#	Signal	In Out	Description
	Name	Type	
40	-DS	I	Host Bus Device Select (or Chip Select) (Active Low)
41	D6	0	Host Bus Data Line 6
61	VCC	PWR	3.3 V or 5 V Supply (depends upon model).
62	MICV	I	Single-Ended Microphone. Single-ended microphone input for dial-up
			SocketModem speakerphone and TAM functions.
63	AGND	GND	Analog Ground. This is tied common with DGND on the SocketModem. To
			minimize potential ground noise issues, connect audio circuit return to AGND.
64	SPKR	0	Speaker – Call monitor.

## Operating Conditions

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
5V Supply Range – Vcc	4.5V	5.5V
3.3V Supply Range – Vcc	3.135V	3.465V

## Absolute Maximum Rating

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Voltage at Any Signal Pin	GND -0.3V	Vcc +3.3V

## DC Electrical Characteristics

#### 5V SocketModem

5VDC Characteristics (VDD = 5V  $\pm$  0.25V) VDDMAX = 5.25V

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Input Low Level	-0.3V	0.8V
-DS (40)		
Input High Level	2.2V	Vcc
A0 (31), A1 (25), -WR (32), -RD (33)		
Output Low Level	NA	0.4V
DO (37), D1 (38), D2 (29), D3 (39), D4 (35), D5 (36), D6 (41), D7 (27)		
Output High Level	2.4V	NA
INT (30)		
Digital Input Capacitance – 50pF		

### 3.3 V SocketModem

#### 3.3VDC Characteristics (VDD = $3.3V \pm 0.3V$ ) VDDMAX = 3.6V

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum				
Input Low Level -DS (40)	-0.3V	0.8V				
Input High Level	2V	Vcc				
A0 (31), A1 (25), A2 (34), –WR (32), –RD (33)	20	VCC				
Output Low Level DO (37), D1 (38), D2 (29), D3 (39), D4 (35), D5 (36), D6 (41), D7 (27) 2 mA, Z <sub>INT</sub> = 120 Ω	NA	0.4V				
Output High Level INT (30)	2V	NA				
2 mA, Z <sub>INT</sub> = 120 Ω  Digital Input Capacitance – 50pF						
Bigital input dupatitation dopi						

### Power\* Measurements

#### Serial Build - MT5692SMI

Input Voltage: 3.3V							
	Sleep Mode	Typical	Maximum				
Current (AMPS)	0.014	0.069	0.080				
Watts	0.046	0.216	0.249				
Input Voltage: 5V	Input Voltage: 5V						
	Sleep Mode	Typical	Maximum				
Current (AMPS)	0.018	0.074	0.088				
Watts	0.089	0.359	0.425				

### Serial with IP Build - MT5692SMI-IP

Input Voltage: 3.3V Sleep Mode Typical Maximum Current (AMPS) 0.047 0.101 0.112 Watts 0.151 0.316 0.349 Input Voltage: 5V Sleep Mode Typical Maximum Current (AMPS) 0.052 0.109 0.121 Watts 0.256 0.528 0.583

#### Voice Build - MT5692SMI-V

Note: The voice build is not available in 3.3V.

Input Voltage: 5V						
	Sleep Mode	Typical	Maximum			
Current (AMPS)	0.016	0.076	0.089			
Watts	0.080	0.380	0.445			

### Parallel Build - MT5692SMI-P

Input Voltage: 3.3V						
	Sleep Mode	Typical	Maximum			
Measured Voltage	3.30	3.29	3.29			
Current (AMPS)	0.015	0.072	0.081			
Watts	0.051	0.236	0.267			
Input Voltage: 5V						
	Sleep Mode	Typical	Maximum			
Measured Voltage	4.91	4.86	4.84			
Current (AMPS) with 5V	0.014	0.069	0.079			
Watts	0.068	0.334	0.380			

**Note:** Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.

Comment [DAR57]: This were updated on 10/16/09 with new info from Tom Fix.

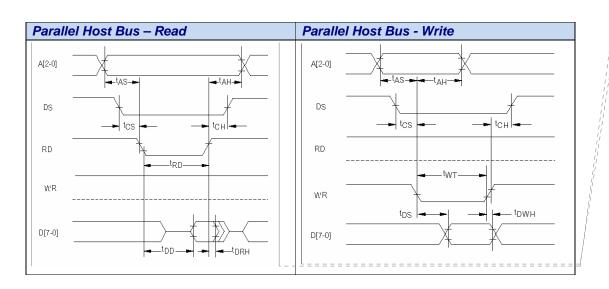
## Parallel Host Bus Timing Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min	Max	Units			
	READ (See Notes)						
<sup>t</sup> AS	Address Setup	5	-	ns			
<sup>t</sup> AH	Address Hold	5	-	ns			
tCS	Chip Select Setup	5	-	ns			
<sup>t</sup> CH	Chip Select Hold	0	-	ns			
<sup>t</sup> RD	RD Strobe Width	77	-	ns			
<sup>t</sup> DD	Read Data Delay	10	25	ns			
<sup>t</sup> DRH	Read Data Hold	5	-	ns			
WRITE (See Notes)							
<sup>t</sup> AS	Address Setup	5	-	ns			
<sup>t</sup> AH	Address Hold	5	-	ns			
<sup>t</sup> CS	Chip Select Setup	0	-	ns			
<sup>t</sup> CH	Chip Select Hold	10	-	ns			
<sup>t</sup> WT	WT Strobe Width	15	-	ns			
<sup>t</sup> DS	Write Data Setup (see Note 4)	15	20	ns			
<sup>t</sup> DWH	Write Data Hold (see Note 5)	5	-	ns			

#### Notes:

- 1. When the host executes consecutive Rx FIFO reads, a minimum delay of 2 times the internal CPU clock cycle plus 15 ns (85.86 ns at 28.224 MHz) is required from the falling edge of RD to the falling edge of the next Host Rx FIFO RD clock.
- When the host executes consecutive Tx FIFO writes, a minimum delay of 2 times the internal CPU clock cycle plus 15 ns (85.86 ns at 28.224 MHz) is required from the falling edge of WT to the falling edge of the next Host Tx FIFO WT clock.

  tRD' tWT = tCYC + 15 ns.
- <sup>t</sup>DS is measured from the point at which both CS and WT are active.
- <sup>t</sup>DWH is measured from the point at which either CS and WT become active.
- Clock Frequency = 1.8432 MHz clock



Comment [DAR58]: Changed by Mike McNeil 7/9/09- Parallel Host Bus Timing Table - For READ change, Address Hold to 5, Chip Select Setup Address Hold to 5, Chip Select Select to 5, Chip Select Hold to 0, RD Strobe Width to 77, Read Data Delay to 10. For WRITE change, Address Hold to 5, WT Strobe Width to 15, Write Data

- 6. Clock Frequency is 1.8432MHz.

Comment [DAR59]: Parallel\_Host\_ Bus\_Read.bmp 31KB

Comment [DAR60]: Parallel\_host\_ Bus\_Write.bmp 31Kb

### SocketModem Parallel Interface

The modem supports a 16550A interface in parallel interface versions. The 16550A interface can operate in FIFO mode or non-FIFO mode. Non-FIFO mode is the same as the 16450-interface operation. FIFO mode's unique operations are described in this chapter.

#### Overview 5 1

The modem emulates the 16450/16550A interface and includes both a 16-byte receiver data first-in first-out buffer (RX FIFO) and a 16-byte transmit data first-in first-out buffer (TX FIFO).

#### FIFO Mode Selected

When FIFO mode is selected in the FIFO Control Register (FCR0 = 1), both FIFOs are operative. Furthermore, when FIFO mode is selected, DMA operation of the FIFO can also be selected (FCR3 = 1).

#### FIFO Mode Not Selected

When FIFO mode is not selected, operation is restricted to a 16450-interface operation.

#### Receive Data

Received Data is read by the host from the Receiver Buffer (RX Buffer). The RX Buffer corresponds to the Receiver Buffer Register in a 16550A device. In FIFO mode, the RX FIFO operates transparently behind the RX Buffer. Interface operation is described with reference to the RX Buffer in FIFO and non-FIFO modes.

### Transmit Data

Transmit Data is loaded by the host into the Transmit Buffer (TX Buffer). The TX Buffer corresponds to the Transmit Holding Register in a 16550A device. In FIFO mode, the TX FIFO operates transparently behind the TX Buffer. Interface operation is described with reference to the TX Buffer in both FIFO and non-FIFO modes.

#### Receiver FIFO Interrupt Operation

#### Receiver Data Available Interrupt

When the FIFO mode is enabled (FCR0 = 1) and receiver interrupt (RX Data Available) is enabled (IER0 = 1), receiver interrupt operation is as follows:

- The Receiver Data Available Flag (LSR0) is set as soon as a received data character is available in the RX FIFO. LSR0 is cleared when RX FIFO is empty.
- The Receiver Data Available Interrupt code (IIR0-IIR4 = 4h) is set whenever the number of received
  data bytes in the RX FIFO reaches the trigger level specified by FCR6-FCR7 bits. It is cleared
  whenever the number of received data bytes in the RX FIFO drops below the trigger level specified by
  FCR6-FCR7 bits.
- The HINT interrupt is asserted whenever the number of received data bytes in the RX FIFO reaches the trigger level specified by FCR6-FCR7 bits. HINT interrupt is de-asserted when the number of received data bytes in the RX FIFO drops below the trigger level specified by FCR6-FCR7 bits.

#### Receiver Character Timeout Interrupts

When the FIFO mode is enabled (FCR0 = 1) and receiver interrupt (Receiver Data Available) is enabled (IER0 = 1), receiver character timeout interrupt operation is as follows:

A Receiver character timeout interrupt code (IIR0-IIR3 = Ch) is set if at least one received character is
in the RX FIFO, the most recent received serial character was longer than four continuous character
times ago (if 2 stop bits are specified, the second stop bit is included in this time period), and the most
recent host read of the RX FIFO was longer than four continuous character times ago.

#### Transmitter FIFO Interrupt Operation

#### Transmitter Empty Interrupt

When the FIFO mode is enabled (FCR0 = 1) and transmitter interrupt (TX Buffer Empty) is enabled (IER0 =1), transmitter interrupt operation is as follows:

- 1. The TX Buffer Empty interrupt code (IIR0-IIR3 = 2h) will occur when the TX Buffer is empty. It is cleared when the TX Buffer is written to (1 to 16 characters) or the IIR is read.
- The TX Buffer Empty indications will be delayed 1 character time minus the last stop bit time whenever
  the following occur: THRE = 1 and there have not been at least two bytes at the same time in the TX
  FIFO Buffer since the last setting of THRE was set. The first transmitter interrupt after setting FCR0 will
  be immediate.

## Register Functional Definitions

The following table delineates the assigned bit functions for the twelve internal registers. The assigned bit functions are more fully defined in the following paragraphs.

#### **Internal Registers**

Register	Register				Bľ	T No.			
No.	Name	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
7	Scratch Register (SCR)	Scratch Register							
0	Modem Status Register (MSR)	Data Carrier Detect (DCD)	Ring Indicator (RI)	Data Set Ready (DSR)	Clear to Send CTS)	Delta Data Carrier Detect (DDCD)	Trailing Edge of Ring Indicator (TERI)	Delta Data Set Ready (DDSR)	Delta Clear to Send (DCTS)
5	Line Status Register (LSR)	RX FIFO Error	Transmitter Empty (TEMT)	Transmitter Buffer Register Empty (THRE)	Break Interrupt (BI)	Framing Error (FE)	Parity Error (PE)	Overrun Error (OE)	Receiver Data Ready (DR)
4	Modem Control Register (MCR)	0	0	0	Local Loopback	Out 2	Out 1	Request to Send (RTS)	Data Terminal Ready (DTR)
З	Line Control Register (LCR)	Divisor Latch Access Bit (DLAB)	Set Break	Stick Parity	Even Parity Select (EPS)	Parity Enable (PEN)	Number of Stop Bits (STB)	Word Length Select Bit 1 (WLS1)	Word Length Select Bit 0 (WLSO)
2	Interrupt Identify Register (IIR) (Read Only)	FIFOs Enabled	FIFOs Enabled	0	0	Pending Interrupt ID Bit 2	Bit 1	Pending Interrupt ID Bit 0	"0" if Interrupt Pending
2	FIFO Control Register (FCR) (Write Only)	Receiver Trigger MSB	Receiver Trigger LSB	Reserved	Reserved	DMA Mode Select	TX FIFO Reset	RX FIFO Reset	FIFO Enable
1 (DLAB = 0)	Interrupt Enable Register (IER)	0	0	0	0	Enable Modem Status Interrupt (EDSSI)	Enable Receiver Line Status Interrupt (ELSI)	Enable Transmitter Holding Register Empty Interrupt (ETBEI)	Enable Received Data Available Interrupt (ERBFI)
0 (DLAB = 0)	(THR)	Transmitter FIFO Buffer Register (Write Only)							
0 (DLAB = 0)	Receiver Buffer Register (RBR)	Receiver FIFO Buffer Register (Read Only)							
1 (DLAB = 1)		Divisor Latch MSB							
0 (DLAB = 1)	Divisor Latch LSB Register (DLL)				Divisor	Latch LSB			

#### IER - Interrupt Enable Register

#### (Addr = 1, DLAB = 0)

The IER enables five types of interrupts that can separately assert the HINT output signal (See the Interrupt Sources and Reset Control table in the IIR section of this chapter). A selected interrupt can be enabled by setting the corresponding enable bit to a 1, or disabled by setting the corresponding enable bit to a 0. Disabling an interrupt in the IER prohibits setting the corresponding indication in the IIR and assertion of HINT. Disabling all interrupts (resetting IER0 – IER3 to a 0) inhibits setting of any Interrupt Identifier Register (IIR) bits and inhibits assertion of the HINT output. All other system functions operate normally, including the setting of the Line Status Register (LSR) and the Modem Status Register (MSR).

The IER enables five types of interrupts that can separately assert the HINT output signal. A selected interrupt can be enabled by setting the corresponding enable bit to a 1, or disabled by setting the corresponding enable bit to a 0. Disabling an interrupt in the IER prohibits setting the corresponding indication in the IIR and assertion of HINT. Disabling all interrupts (resetting IER0 - IER3 to a 0) inhibits setting of any Interrupt Identifier Register (IIR) bits and inhibits assertion of the HINT output. All other system functions operate normally, including the setting of the Line Status Register (LSR) and the Modem Status Register (MSR).

Bits 7-4 Not used.

Always 0.

Bit 3 Enable Modem Status Interrupt (EDSSI).

This bit, when a 1, enables assertion of the HINT output whenever the Delta CTS (MSR0), Delta DSR (MSR1), Delta TER (MSR2), or Delta DCD (MSR3) bit in the Modem Status Register (MSR) is a 1. This bit, when a 0, disables assertion of HINT due to setting of any of these four MSR bits.

Bit 2 Enable Receiver Line Status Interrupt (ELSI).

This bit, when a 1, enables assertion of the HINT output whenever the Overrun Error (LSR1), Parity Error (LSR2), Framing Error (LSR3), or Break Interrupt (LSR4) receiver status bit in the Line Status Register (LSR) changes state. This bit, when a 0, disables assertion of HINT due to change of the receiver LSR bits 1-4

Bit 1 Enable Transmitter Holding Register Empty Interrupt (ETBEI).

This bit, when a 1, enables assertion of the HINT output when the Transmitter Empty bit in the Line Status Register (LSR5) is a 1.This bit, when a 0, disables assertion of HINT due to LSR5.

Bit 0 Enable Receiver Data Available Interrupt (ERBFI) and Character Timeout in FIFO Mode.

This bit, when a 1, enables assertion of the HINT output when the Receiver Data Ready bit in the Line Status Register (LSR0) is a1 or character timeout occurs in the FIFO mode. This bit, when a 0, disables assertion of HINT due to the LSR0 or character timeout.

## FCR - FIFO Control Register

### (Addr = 2, Write Only)

The FCR is a write-only register used to enable FIFO mode, clear the RX FIFO and TX FIFO, enable DMA mode, and set the RX FIFO trigger level.

Bits 7-6	RX FIFO Trigger Level FCR7 and FCR6 set the trigger level for the RX FIFO (Receiver Data Available) interrupt.				
FCR7		FCR6	RX FIFO Trigger Level (Bytes)		
0 0		0	01		
0		1	04		
1		0	08		
1		1	14		
Bits 5, 4	No	tused			
Bit 3	Wh	eration (FCR3 =	s selected (FCR0 = 1), FCR3 selects non-DMA operation (FCR3 = 0) or DMA  1). When FIFO mode is not selected (FCR0 = 0), this bit is not used (the non-DMA mode in 16450 operation).		
	DMA Operation in FIFO Mode  RXRDY will be asserted with the number of characters in the RX FIFO us equal to or greater than the value in the RX FIFO Trigger Level (IIR0-IIR3 = 4h) or the received character timeout (IIRO-IIR3 = Ch) has occurred. RXTDY will go inactive when there are no more characters in the RX FIFO.  TXRDY will be asserted when there are one or more empty (unfilled) locations in the TX FIFO. TXRDY will go inactive when the TX FIFO is completely full.				
	Non-DMA Operation in FIFO Mode  RXRDY will be asserted when there are one or more characters in the RX FIFO. RXRDY will go inactive when there are no more characters in the RX FIFO.  TXRDY will be asserted when there are no characters in the TX FIFO. TXRDY will go inactive when the character is loaded into the TX FIFO Buffer.				
Bit 2	TX FIFO Reset  When FCR2 is a 1, all bytes in the TX FIFO are cleared. This bit is cleared automatically by the modem.				
Bit 1	Wh	XX FIFO Reset When FCR1 is a 1, all bytes in the RX FIFO are cleared. This bit is cleared automatically by the nodem.			
Bit 0	FIFO Enable When FCR0 is a 0, 16450 mode is selected and all bits are cleared in both FIFOs. When FCR0 is a 1, FIFO mode (16550A) is selected and both FIFOs are enabled. FCR0 must be a 1 when other bits in the FCR are written or they will not be acted upon.				

### IIR - Interrupt Identifier Register

#### (Addr = 2)

The Interrupt Identifier Register (IIR) identifies the existence and type of up to five prioritized pending interrupts. Four priority levels are set to assist interrupt processing in the host. The four levels, in order of decreasing priority, are Highest: Receiver Line Status, 2: Receiver Data Available or Receiver Character Timeout. 3: TX Buffer Empty, and 4: Modem Status.

When the IIR is accessed, the modem freezes all interrupts and indicates the highest priority interrupt pending to the host. Any change occurring in interrupt conditions are not indicated until this access is complete.

Bits 7-6	FIFO Mode These two bits copy FCR0.
Bits 5-4	Not Used Always 0.
Bits 3-1	Highest Priority Pending Interrupt These three bits identify the highest priority pending interrupt (Table below). Bit 3 is applicable only when FIFO mode is selected; otherwise, bit 3 is a 0.
Bit 0	Interrupt Pending When this bit is a 0, an interrupt is pending; IIR bits 1-3 can be used to determine the source of the interrupt. When this bit is a 1, an interrupt is not pending

#### **Interrupt Sources and Reset Control Table**

Inte	errupt lo	dentifica	ation Re	egister	Interre	upt Set and Reset Fund	ctions
Bit 3 (Note 1)	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Priority Level	Interrupt Type	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Reset Control
0	0	0	1	_	None	None	_
0	1	1	0	Highest	Receiver Line Status	Overrun Error (OE) (LSR1), Parity Error (PE) (LSR2), Framing Error (FE) (LSR3), or Break Interrupt (BI) (LSR4)	Reading the LSR
0	1	0	0	2	Received Data Available	Received Data Available (LSR0) or RX FIFO Trigger Level (FCR6-FCR7) Reached <sup>1</sup>	Reading the RX Buffer or the RX FIFO drops below the Trigger Level
1	1	0	0	2	Character Timeout Indication <sup>1</sup>	The RX FIFO contains at least 1 character and no characters have been removed from or input to the RX FIFO during the last 4 character times.	Reading the RX Buffer
0	0	1	0	3	TX Buffer Empty	TX Buffer Empty	Reading the IIR or writing to the TX Buffer
Note:	0	0 Mode o	0	4	Modem Status	Delta CTS (DCTS) (MSR0), Delta DSR (DDST) (MSR1), Trailing Edge Ring Indicator (TERI) (MSR3), or Delta DCD (DCD) (MSR4)	Reading the MSR

## LCR – Line Control Register

## (Addr = 3)

The Line Control Register (LCR) specifies the format of the asynchronous data communications exchange.

Bit 7	This bit mo	<b>Divisor Latch Access Bit (DLAB)</b> This bit must be set to a 1 to access the Divisor Latch Registers during a read or write operation. It must be reset to a 0 to access the Receiver Buffer, the Transmitter Buffer, or the Interrupt Enable Register.							
Bit 6	When bit 6 bit 6 is a 0	Set Break When bit 6 is a 1, the Transmit data is forced to the break condition, i.e., space (0) is sent. When bit 6 is a 0, break is not sent. The Set Break bit acts only on the Transmit data and has no effect on the serial in logic.							
Bit 5	transmitte parity is se	ity is enabled (LCR3 = 1) and stic d and checked by the receiver as	k parity is selected (LCR5 = 1), the parity bit is a 0 if even parity is selected (LCR4 – 1) or a 1 if odd k parity is not selected (LCR3 = 0), parity is transmit d LCR4 bits.						
Bit 4	Even Parity Select (EPS) When parity is enabled (LCR3 = 1) and stick parity is not selected (LCR5 = 0), the number of 1s transmitted or checked by the receiver in the data word bits and parity bit is either even (LCR4 = 1) or odd (LCR4 = 0).								
Bit 3	Enable Parity (PEN) When bit 3 is a 1, a parity bit is generated in the serial out (transmit) data stream and checked in the serial in (receive) data stream as determined by the LCR4 and LCR5 bits. The parity bit is located between the last data bit and the first stop bit.								
Bit 2	Number of Stop GBITS (STB)  This bit specifies the number of stop bits in each serial out character. If bit 2 is a 0, one stop bit is generated regardless of word length. If bit 2 is a 1 and 5-bit word length is selected, one and one-half stop bits are generated. If bit 2 is a 1 and 6-, 7-, or 8-bit word length is selected, two stop bits are generated. The serial in logic checks the first stop bit only, regardless of the number of stop bits selected.								
Bit 1-0	Word Length Select (WLS0 and WLS1)  These two bits specify the number of bits in each serial in or serial out character. The encoding of bits 0 and 1 is:								
Bit 1	Bit 0	Word Length							
0	0	5 Bits (Not supported)							
0	1	6 Bits (Not supported)							
1	0	7 Bits							
1	1	8 Bits							

## MCR - Modem Control Register

## (Addr = 4)

The Modem Control Register (MCR) controls the interface with modem or data set.

Bit 7-5	Not used Always 0
Bit 4	Local Loopback When this bit is set to a 1, the diagnostic mode is selected and the following occurs:  1. Data written to the Transmit Buffer is looped back to the Receiver Buffer.  2. The DTS (MCR0), RTS (MCR1), Out1 (MCR2), and Out2 (MCR3) modem control register bits are internally connected to the DSR (MSR5), CTS (MSR4), RI (MSR6), and DCD (MSR7) modem status register bits, respectively.
Bit 3	Output 2 When this bit is a 1, HINT is enabled. When this bit is a 0, HINT is in the high impedance state.
Bit 2	Output 1 This bit is used in local loopback (see MCR4).
Bit 1	Request to Send (RTS) This bit controls the Request to Send (RTS) function. When this bit is a 1, RTS is on. When this bit is a 0, RTS is off.
Bit 0	Data Terminal Ready (DTR) This bit controls the Data Terminal Ready (DTR) function. When this bit is a 1, DTR is on. When this bit is a 0, DTR is off.

## LSR - Line Status Register

## (Addr = 5)

This 8-bit register provides status information to the host concerning data transfer

Bit 7	RX FIFO Error In the 16450 mode, this bit is not used and is always 0. In the FIFO mode, this bit is set if there are one or more characters in the RX FIFO with parity error, framing error, or break indication detected. This bit is reset to a 0 when the host reads the LSR and note of the above conditions exist in the RX FIFO.
Bit 6	Transmitter Empty (TEMT) This bit is set to a 1 whenever the TX Buffer (THR) and equivalent of the Transmitter Shift Register (TRS) are both empty. It is reset to a 0 whenever either the THR or the equivalent of the TSR contains a character. In the FIFO mode, this bit is set to a 1 whenever the TX FIFO and the equivalent of the TSR are both empty
Bit 5	Transmitter Holding Register Empty (THRE) [TX Buffer Empty]  This bit, when set, indicates that the TX Buffer is empty and the modem can accept a new character for transmission. In addition, this bit causes the modem to issue an interrupt to the host when the Transmit Holding Register Empty Interrupt Enable bit (IIR1) is set to 1. The THRE bit is set to a 1 when a character is transferred from the TX Buffer. The bit is reset to 0 when a byte is written into the TX Buffer by the host.  In the FIFO mode, this bit is set when the TX FIFO is empty; it is cleared when at least one byte is in the TX FIFO.
Bit 4	Break Interrupt (BI) This bit is set to a 1 whenever the received data input is a space (logic 0) for longer than two full word lengths plus 3 bits. The BI is reset when the host reads the LSR.
Bit 3	Framing Error (FE) This bit indicates that the received character did not have a valid stop bit. The FE bit is set to a 1 whenever the stop bit following the last data bit or parity bit is detected as a logic o (space). The FE bit is reset to a 0 when the host reads the LSR.  In the FIFO mode, the error indication is associated with the particular character in the FIFO it applies to. The FE bit set to a 1 when this character is loaded into the RX Buffer.
Bit 2	Parity Error (PE) This bit indicates that the received data character in the RX Buffer does not have the correct even or odd parity, as selected by the Even Parity Select bit (LCR4) and the Stick Parity bit (LCR5). The PE bit is reset to a 0 when the host reads the LSR.  In the FIFO mode, the error indication is associated with the particular character in the FIFO it applies to. The PE bit set to a 1 when this character is loaded into the RX Buffer.
Bit 1	Overrun Error (OE) This bit is set to a 1 whenever received data is loaded into the RX Buffer before the host has read the previous data from the RX Buffer. The OE is reset to a 0 when the host reads the LSR. In the FIFO mode, if data continues to fill beyond the trigger level, an overrun condition will occur only if the RX FIFO is full and the next character has been completely received.
Bit 0	Receiver Data Ready (DR) This bit is set to a 1 whenever a complete incoming character has been received and transferred into the RX Buffer. The DR bit is reset to a 0 when the host reads the RX Buffer. In the FIFO mode, the DR bit is set when the number of received data bytes in the RX FIFO equals or exceeds the trigger level specified in the FCR0-FCR1.

#### MSR - Modem Status Register

#### (Addr = 6)

The Modem Status Register (MSR) reports current state and change information of the modem. Bits 4-7 supply current state and bits 0-3 supply change information. The change bits are set to a 1 whenever a control input from the modem changes state from the last MSR read by the host. Bits 0-3 are reset to 0 when the host reads the MSR or upon reset.

Whenever bits 0, 1, 2, or 3 are set to a 1, a Modem Status Interrupt (IIR0-IIR3 = 0) is generated.

Bit 7	Data Carrier Detect (DCD) This bit indicates the logic state of the DCH# (RLSD#) output. If Loopback is selected (MCR4 = 1), this bit reflects the state of the Out2 bit in the MCR (MCR3).
Bit 6	Ring Indicator (RI) This bit indicates the logic state of the RI# output. If Loopback is selected (MCR4 = 1), this bit reflects the state of the Out1 bit in the MCR (MCR2).
Bit 5	Data Set Ready (DSR) This bit indicates the logic state of the DSR# output. If Loopback is selected (MCR4 = 1), this bit reflects the state of the DTR in the MCR (MCR0).
Bit 4	Clear to Send (CTS) This bit indicates the logic state of the CTS# output. If Loopback is selected (MCR4 = 1), this bit reflects the state of the RTS bit in the MCR (MCR1).
Bit 3	Delta Data Carrier Detect (DDCD)  This bit is set to a 1 when the DCD bit changes state since the host last read the MSR.
Bit 2	Trailing Edge of Ring Indicator (TERI)  This bit is set to a 1 when the RI bit changes from a 1 to a 0 state since the host last read the MSR.
Bit 1	Delta Data Set Ready (DDSR)  This bit is set to a 1 when the DSR bit has changed since the host last read the MSR.
Bit 0	Delta Clear to Send (DCTS) This bit is set to a 1 when the CTS bit has changed since the MSR the host last read the MSR.

#### RBX - RX Buffer (Receiver Buffer Register)

#### (Addr = 0, DLAB = 0)

The RX Buffer (RBR) is a read-only register at location 0 (with DLAB = 0). Bit 0 is the least significant bit of the data and is the first bit received.

### THR – TX Buffer (Transmitter Holding Register)

#### (Addr = 0, DLAB = 0)

The TX Buffer (THR) is a write-only register at address 0 when DLAB = 0. Bit 0 is the least significant bit and the first bit sent.

### SCR - Scratch Register

#### (Addr = 7)

The Scratchpad Register is a read-write register at location 7. This register is not used by the modem and can be used by the host for temporary storage.

## **Divisor Registers**

#### (Addr = 0 and 1, DLAB = 1)

The Divisor Latch LS (least significant byte) and Divisor Latch MS (most significant byte) are two read-write registers at locations 0 and 1 when DLAB = 1, respectively.

The baud rate is selected by loading each divisor latch with the appropriate hex value.

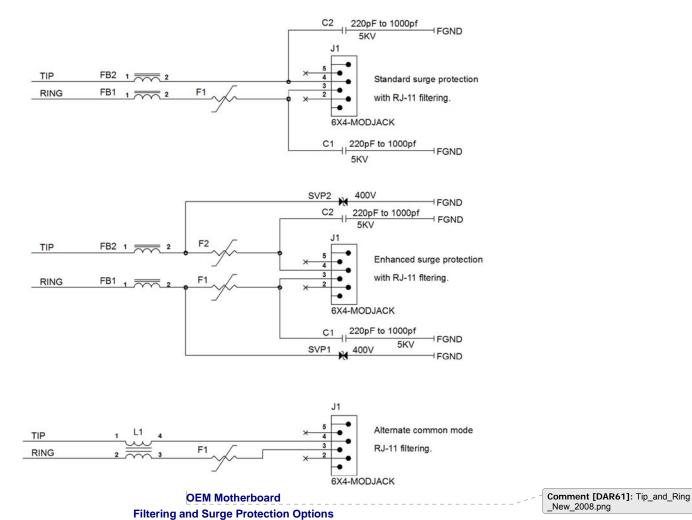
Programmable values corresponding to the desired baud rate are listed in Table on following page.

Divisor Latch (Hex)			
MS	LS	Divisor (Decimal)	Baud Rate
06	00	1536	75
04	17	1047	110
03	00	768	150
01	80	384	300
00	C0	192	600
00	60	96	1200
00	30	48	2400
00	18	24	4800
00	0C	12	9600
00	06	6	19200
00	04	4	28800
00	03	3	38400
00	02	2	57600
00	01	1	115600
00	00	NA	230400

**Programmable Baud Rates** 

## Application Notes

## Tip and Ring Interface



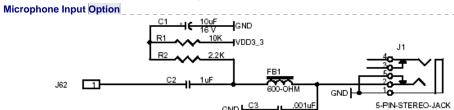
See Design Considerations and Recommended Parts in Chapter 1.

#### **Recommended Uses for Filtering Options**

- Enhanced Surge Protection with RJ-11 Filtering
   Use this option when additional lightning protection may be needed.
- Alternate Common Mode with RJ-11 Filtering
   Use this option when your design has common mode emission issues.

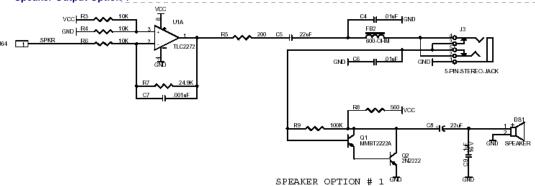
## Microphone and Speaker

Note: Applies to the MT5692SMI Voice only.



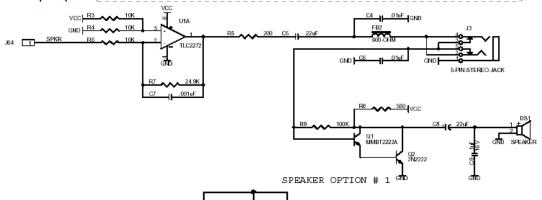
Comment [DAR62]: Filtering-micoption.png filed under Universal\_SocketModem\Graphics\Mi ke\_Z\_Filtering\_Drawings

#### Speaker Output Option 1

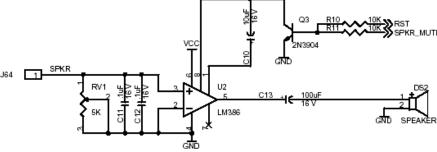


Comment [DAR63]: Filtering-Speaker1.png filed under Universal\_SocketModem\Graphics\Mi ke\_Z\_Filtering\_Drawings

#### Speaker Output Option 2



Comment [DAR64]: Filtering-Speaker1.png filed under Universal\_SocketModem\Graphics\Mi ke\_Z\_Filtering\_Drawings



Differences between Speaker 1 Example and Speaker 2 Example

Speaker 1 does not have an amplifier while Speaker 2 does.

#### **Specifications for the Microphone Input**

Impedance	>70K ohms	
AC Input Voltage Range	1.1V P-P	
Reference Voltage	1.35V	

### Specifications for the Speaker Output from the Codec

Minimum Load	300 Ω
Maximum Capacitive Load	0.01 uF
Output Impedance	10 Ω
AC Output Voltage Range	1.4V P-P
Reference voltage	+1.35 VDC
DC Offset Voltage	± 20 mV

#### **Speaker Output**

The speaker output from the codec is coupled to the speaker pin (64) through a 1uF cap and a 33 ohm resistor. The speaker pin is shared with the call progress monitor which is a digital I/O pin on the DSP that is coupled to the speaker pin through a 1uF and 3.9K.

**Comment [DAR65]:** This text came from the Conexant Codec data sheet, document CX20437, page 44.

## Chapter 8 - SocketModem® (MT2492SMI)

#### Introduction

The Multi-Tech SocketModem MT2492SMI-xx utilizes the LSI CVxx Controller Based Modem Devices and the LSI CSP104 Silicon Direct Access Arrangement (DAA) to form a 2-chip complete embedded modem. This solution includes a DSP data pump, modem controller, on-chip RAM and ROM, codec, DAA, analog output, and 24.576 MHz clock input.

The modem accepts standard modem AT commands and provides connect rates up to 56 Kbps full-duplex over the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) and features a complete set of modem protocols including all ITU-T standard formats up to V.92.

To provide the most flexibility, the CVxx modem system-side device provides numerous additional features for embedded modem applications. It includes call progress monitoring through standard result codes, error correction, data compression, autobaud, and fast connect modes. In addition, because the CVxx modem integrates the DAA, analog features (such as line-in use and over current detection) are included.

This device is ideal for embedded modem applications due to its simple host interface, small board space, and low power consumption.

## Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order this Product			
MT2492SMI-92	V.92 Serial Data 5V	Regional				
MT2492SMI-34	V.34 Serial Data 5V	Regional				
MT2492SMI-22	V.22bis Serial Data 5V	Regional				
MT2492SMI-L-92	V.92 Serial Data 3.3V	Regional				
MT2492SMI-L-34	V.34 Serial Data 3.3V	Regional				
MT2492SMI-L-22	V.22bis Serial Data 3.3V	Regional				
	Telecom Label					
MT2492SMI-LS	MT2492SMI-Regulatory Label	Regional				
	Developer Kit					
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Regional				

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

92 V.92/56K data rate

34 V.34/33.6K data rate

22 V.22bis data rate

L 3.3 Volt Build

LS Telecom Label

**UDK** Universal Developer Kit

#### **Other Product Codes:**

The complete product code may end in .Rx. For example, MT2492SMI-92.Rx.

"R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

#### AT Commands Reference Guide

Product	Reference Guides Title and Document Product Number	Fax Commands	Voice Commands
SocketModem	SocketModem MT2492SMI AT Commands	NA	NA
(MT2492SMI)	Reference Guide (S000435x)		

## Technical Specifications

The SocketModem (MT2492SMI) meets the following specifications:

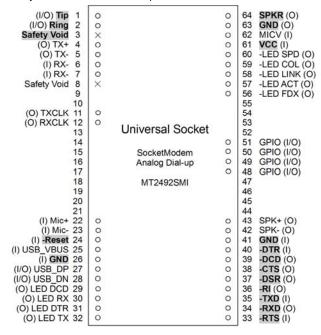
Category	Description
Data Standards	V.92, V.90, V.34, V.29, V.22bis, V.22, V.23, V.21; Bell 212A & Bell 103
Data Format	Serial, asynchronous
Character Format	10 bit
Serial/Data Speeds	Serial port data rates adjustable to 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19,200, 38,400, 57,600, and 115,200
Client-to-Client Data Rates	33,600, 31,200, 28,800, 26,400, 24,000, 21,600, 19,200, 16,800 bps
	14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800 bps
	2400, 1200, 0-300 bps
Data Error Correction	V.42 (LAP-M or MNP 2–4)
Data Compression	V.42bis, MNP 5
Modes of Operation	Full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode, command mode, and online command mode
Weight	0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.)
Operating Temperature	0 to +70° C
Storage Temperature	-10° to +85° C
Humidity	20% to 90% (non-condensing)
Operating Voltage	Typical: 3.3VDC ± 5%; Absolute Maximum Supply Voltage: 3.6VDC Typical: 5VDC ± 5%; Absolute Maximum Supply Voltage: 5.25VDC
Power Measurements	3.3 Volt: Typical: 86mA (.283W @ 3.3VDC) Maximum: 96mA (.345W @ 3.6VDC)  5 Volt: Typical: 88.5mA (.442W @ 5VDC) Maximum: 94.8mA (.498W @ 5.25VDC)  Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.
Transmit Sensitivity	-12 dBm (varies by country)
Receiver Sensitivity	-40 dBm (-43 dBm under worst case conditions)
DAA Isolation	1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC
Flow Control	XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)
Command Buffer	50 characters
Certifications & Approvals	Safety Certifications UL/cUL 60950-1 EN 60950-1 AS/NZS 60950:2000 CCC EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 (Class B) Canadian EMC (Class B) EN 55022 (Class B) EN 55024
Warranty	2 years
Intelligent Features	TIA-602 AT command compatible AT command set support Supports V.80 Line polarity reversal detection Line current loss detection Line-in-use detection during on-hook operation Extension pickup detection "Bell Core Type 1" Caller ID Autodial, redial Pulse or tone dial Auto answer

### SocketModem Pin Out

The MT2492SMI SocketModem with a serial interface provides an on-board DAA with tip and ring connections, audio circuit for call-progress monitoring and serial interface via logic level signals.

Note: The bolded, shaded pins are active MT2492MI pins.

Comment [DAR66]: Pin Out\_MT2492SMI.FH9 & .png



Top View
Serial SocketModem Pin Out

For pin descriptions, see the Universal Pin Out Description in Chapter 1.

#### DC Electrical Characteristics

### 3.3V Serial SocketModem

3.3VDC Characteristics (VDD =  $3.3V \pm 0.3V$ ) vddmax = 3.6V

Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33), -RESET (24)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
Outputs	Output High	Output Low	
-DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	Min 2.4V	Max 0.4V	
2mA, Z <sub>INT</sub> = 120 Ω			
Digital Input Capacitance			50pF

#### 5V Serial SocketModem

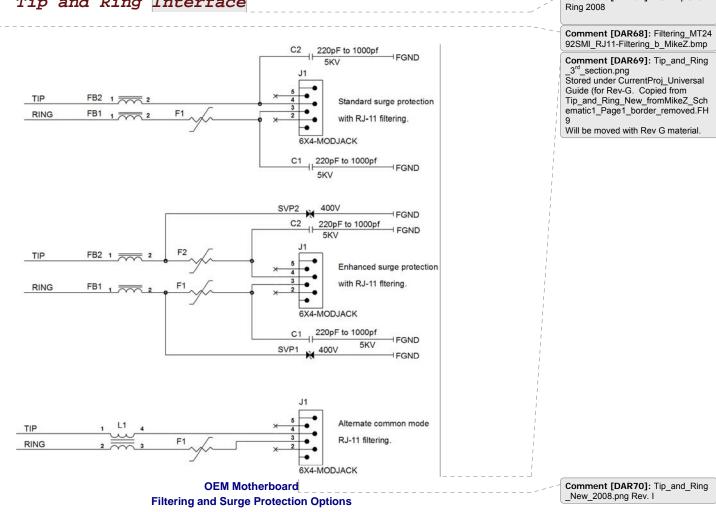
5VDC Characteristics (VDD = 5V ± 0.25V) VDDMAX = 5.25V

Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33), -RESET (24)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
Outputs	Output High	Output Low	
-DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	Min 2.4V	Max 0.4V	
$2mA$ , $Z_{INT} = 120 \Omega$			
Digital Input Capacitance			50pF

Comment [DAR67]: New Tip and

## Application Notes

## Tip and Ring Interface



See Design Considerations and Recommended Parts in Chapter 1.

#### Recommended Uses for Filtering Options

- **Enhanced Surge Protection with RJ-11 Filtering** Use this option when additional lightning protection may be needed.
- Alternate Common Mode with RJ-11 Filtering Use this option when your design has common mode emission issues.

# Chapter 9 - SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)

#### Introduction

The Multi-Tech SocketModem supports analog data modem operation with V.22bis Fast Connect, V.42bis data compression, and V.80 synchronous access mode. The SocketModem is a space-efficient (1" × 2.5"), embedded modem that is ready-tointegrate into your applications; therefore, dramatically reducing development time and costs for system designers.

The MT2456SMI-22 SocketModem is a standard 20-pin modem used for integrating data communications. It is a single-port 5V or 3.3V modem that integrates a modem controller, DSP, and DAA in a 1" x 2.5" form factor and communicates to a host controller via an asynchronous serial interface.

## Product Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order this Product		
MT2456SMI-22	V.22bis Serial Data 5V	Global			
MT2456SMI-L-22	V.22bis Serial Data 3.3V	Global			
Telecom Label					
MT2456SMI-LS	MT2456SMI-Global Regulatory Label	Global			
Developer Kit					
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Global			

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

22 V.22bis

L 3.3 Volt Build

LS Telecom Label

UDK Universal Developer Kit

#### **Other Product Codes:**

The complete product code may end in **.Rx**. For example, MT2456SMI-22.Rx. "R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

### AT Commands Reference Guide

Product	Reference Guides Title and Document Product Number	Fax Commands	Voice Commands
SocketModem	MT2456SMI-22 AT Commands Reference Guide	NA	NA
(MT2456SMI-22)	(S000281x)		

## Technical Specifications

The SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22) meets the following specifications:

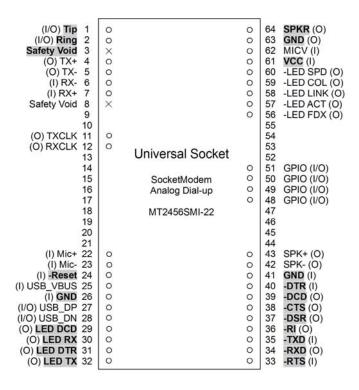
Category	Description		
Data Standards	V.22bis, V.22; Bell 212A and 103		
Data Format	Serial, asynchronous		
Character Format	10 bit		
Serial/Data Speeds	Serial port data rates adjustable to 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19,200, 38,400, 57,600, and 115,200		
Client-to-Client Data Rates	2400, 1200, 0-300 bps		
Data Error Correction	V.42 (LAP-M or MNP 2–4)		
Data Compression	V.42bis		
Modes of Operation	Full duplex over dial-up lines; data mode, command mode, and online command mode		
Weight	0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.)		
Operating Temperature	0 to +70° C		
Storage Temperature	-40° to +85° C		
Humidity	20% to 90% (non-condensing)		
Operating Voltage	Typical: 3.3 V DC ± 5%; Absolute Maximum Supply Voltage: 3.6 V DC Typical: 5 V DC ± 5%; Absolute Maximum Supply Voltage: 5.5 V DC		
Power Consumption	Source Voltage         Maximum         Idle         Typical           3.3VDC         64mA         59.6mA         62mA           5VDC         68mA         60ma         61mA		
Transmit Sensitivity	-12 dBm (varies by country)		
Receiver Sensitivity	-43 dBm		
DAA Isolation	1.5Kv r.m.s. or 2121 VDC at working voltage of 250VAC		
Flow Control	XON/XOFF (software), RTS/CTS (hardware)		
Command Buffer	50 characters		
Warranty	2 years		
Intelligent Features	AT command compatible V.22bis fast connect Supports V.80 Supports Fast POS 9600 Line polarity reversal detection Line current loss detection Line-in-use detection Extension pickup detection Extension pickup detection Remote hang-up detection Call waiting detection "Bell Core Type 1" Caller ID Autodial, redial Pulse or tone dial Auto answer Call status display		

### SocketModem Configuration

#### Serial Configuration

The MT2456SMI-22 SocketModem with a serial interface uses a 20-pin interface to provide an on-board DAA with tip and ring connections, audio circuit for call-progress monitoring and serial interface via logic level signals.

Note: The bolded, shaded pins are active MT2456SMI-22 pins.



Top View
Serial SocketModem Pinout

Comment [DAR71]: 2456SMI.png

For pin descriptions, see the Universal Pinout Descriptions in Chapter 1.

## **Electrical Characteristics**

## 3.3V Serial SocketModem

3.3VDC Characteristics (VDD =  $3.3V \pm 0.3V$ ) vDDMAX = 3.6V

Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33), -RESET (24)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
Outputs	Output High	Output Low	
-DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34) 2mA, Z <sub>INT</sub> = 120 Ω	Min 2.4V	Max 0.4V	
Digital Input Capacitance			50pF

## 5V Serial SocketModem

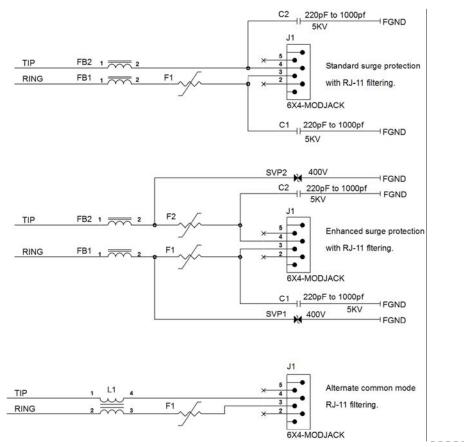
5VDC Characteristics (VDD = 5V  $\pm$  0.25V) vDDMAX = 5.25V

Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33), -RESET (24)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
Outputs	Output High	Output Low	
-DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	Min 2.4V	Max 0.4V	
$2mA, Z_{INT} = 120 \Omega$			
Digital Input Capacitance			50pF

Comment [DAR72]: Tip\_and\_Ring \_New\_2008.png Rev. I

# Applications Notes

# Tip and Ring Interface



OEM Motherboard
Filtering and Surge Protection Options

See Design Considerations and Recommended Parts in Chapter 1.

# Part 4 Embedded Device Servers

Chapter 10 - SocketEthernet IP (MT100SEM-IP)
Chapter 11 - SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP)
Chapter 12 - SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI)

# Chapter 10 - SocketEthernet IP® (MT100SEM-IP)

# Introduction

The **SocketEthernet IP**® (MT100SEM-IP) device server connects serial devices to an IP network for remote monitoring, control and configuration. The space efficient communications device (1" x 2.5") integrates Multi-Tech's Universal IP™ protocol stack and a serial-to-Ethernet interface into a single, universal socket design. The SocketEthernet IP can make your existing and next generation device, machine or system, IP-ready while you focus on developing its core features.

# Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order this Product	
	MT100SEM-IP			
MT100SEM-IP	Embedded Serial-to-Ethernet Device Server with Universal IP™ – 5V	Global		
MT100SEM-L-IP	Embedded Serial-to-Ethernet Device Server with Universal IP™ – 3.3V	Global		
MT100SEM-L-HV-IP	Embedded Serial-to-Ethernet Device Server with High Voltage Dielectric Isolation (EN60601) and Universal IP™ – 5V	Global		
Developer Kit				
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Global		

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

IP Universal IP™ Stack

L 3.3 Volt

HV High Voltage Dielectric Isolation (EN60601)

UDK Universal Developer Kit

#### **Other Product Codes:**

The complete product code may end in .Rx. For example, MT100SEM-L-IP.Rx

"R" indicates product revision. " $\dot{x}$ " is the revision number.

# AT Commands Reference Guide

Product	Reference Guides Title and Document Product Number	Fax Commands	Voice Commands
Serial-to-Serial Device Server	Multi-Tech Universal IP AT Commands (S000426x)	NA	NA
(MT100SEM-IP)			

# Technical Specifications

The SocketEthernet IP (MT100SEM-IP) meets the following specifications:

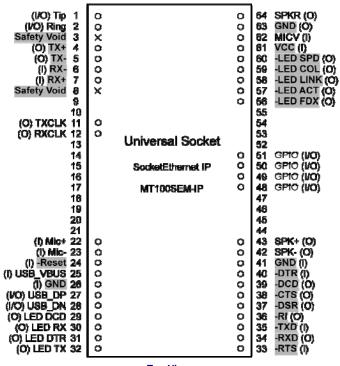
Category	Description	
Interfaces	10/100BaseT Ethernet, Asynchronous Serial	
Serial Character Format	3, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1,	
Serial/Data Speeds	300 to 921600 bps	
Ethernet Data Speeds	10MB or 100MB	
Physical Description	2.541" L × 1.045" W × 0.680" H; 0.6 oz.	
	(6.45 cm × 2.65 cm × 1.7 cm; 0.017 kg.)	
Operating Temperature	0° to +70° C	
Storage Temperature	-40° C to +85° C	
Humidity	20% to 90% (non-condensing)	
Operating Voltage	5VDC or 3.3VDC	
Power Measurements	See the Power Measurements table.	
Flow Control	RTS/CTS (hardware)	
Network Protocols Supported	ARP, DHCP client, DNS client, FTP, ICMP (ping), IP, POP3, SMTP, TCP, Telnet server, UDP	
Management	Serial Telnet Web-based configuration	
Certifications & Approvals	Safety Certifications UL 60950 cUL 60950 EN 60950 EN 60950 AS/NZS 60950:2000 Safety Certifications for High Voltage Build UL 60601-1 EN 60601-1 EMC Approvals FCC Part 15 Class B Canada Class B EN 55022 Class B EN 55024	
Warranty	2 years	
Intelligent Features	Complete serial-to-Ethernet connectivity solution including network processor, media access controller and physical interface.  AT Command compatible  LED driver outputs for visual monitoring speed, link, activity, collision and duplex mode  Half duplex or full duplex support on the LAN interface  Central site setup and control of the remote communications device.  Flash memory to update firmware with the latest enhancements	

Comment [DAR73]: From Dustin 6/24/09

# SocketEthernet IP Pin Out

The SocketEthernet IP uses a 22-pin interface to provide an on-board Ethernet media access controller, an Ethernet physical layer (without the RJ-45 jack), an LED driver for Ethernet monitoring, and a serial interface.

Note: The shaded, bolded pins are SocketEthernet IP active pins.



Top View
SocketEthernet IP MT100SEM-IP Pin Out

Comment [DAR74]: M100SEM.png

For pin descriptions, see the Universal Pin Out Descriptions in Chapter 1.

# DC Electrical Characteristics

# 3.3V Serial

# 3.3VDC Characteristics (VDD = $3.3V \pm 0.3V$ ) vddmax = 3.6V

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum	
Input Low Level -DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33), -RESET (24) Note: These inputs are 5 volt tolerant	-0.3V	0.8V	
Input High Level -DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33), -RESET (24) Note: These inputs are 5 volt tolerant	Min 2.52V	VDD	
Output Low Level -DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	NA	0.4V	Current Drive 2mA
Output High Level -DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	Min. 2.3V	NA	Current Drive 2mA
Digital Input Capacitance – 5 pF			

# 5V Serial

# 5VDC Characteristics (VDD = 5V $\pm$ 0.25V) vddmax = 5.25V

arameter	Minimum	Maximum	
nput Low Level -DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33), -RESET (24)	-0.3V	0.8V	
nput High Level -DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33), -RESET (24)	2.52V	VDD	
Output Low Level -DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	NA	0.4V	Current Drive 2mA
Dutput High Level -DCD (39), -CTS (38), -DSR (37), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	2.3V	NA	Current Drive 2mA
. •			

# Power\* Measurements

# MT100SEM-IP Measured Power at Input Voltage 5.00

	Sleep	Typical	Maximum
Current (AMPS)	0.187	0.187	0.194
Watts	0.935	0.935	.97

# MT100SEM-IP Measured Power at Input Voltage 3.3

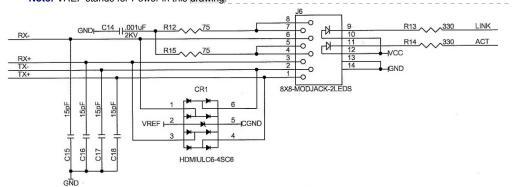
	Sleep	Typical	Maximum
Current (AMPS)	NA	0.137	0.168
Watts	NA	0.411	0.504

<sup>\*</sup> Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.

# Application Notes

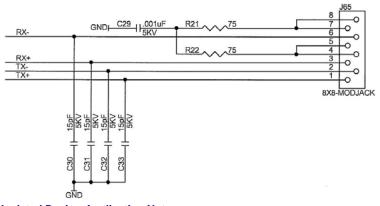
# Ethernet Interface - Non-Isolated Design

Note: VREF stands for Power in this drawing.



Comment [DAR75]: MT100SEM IP Non Isolated Scan0578\_000.jgp 97KB jpg was smaller than png. Filed under CurrentProj\_Universal\_Guide\_2009\_ Rev\_J\Graphics

# Ethernet Interface - Isolated Design



Comment [DAR76]: MT100SEM IP Isolated Scan0579\_000.jpg (jpg was smaller than png) 169KB. Filed under CurrentProj\_Universal\_Guide\_2009\_Rev\_J/Graphics

#### **Isolated Design Application Note**

The MT100SEM-L-HV-IP was designed to meet Basic Isolation at 240Vac according to the international medical directive for safety (EN60601-1). The recommended components for an isolated design comply with the same standard.

# Recommended Parts

# Recommended Capacitors for a Non-Isolated Design:

Manufacturer – NIC Components Corp.
Part Number – NMC0603NPO150J50TRPF

Recommended Safety Rated Capacitors for an <u>Isolated Design</u>: The recommended capacitors are Y2 rated and meet supplementary isolation at 240Vac along with the required creepages and clearances.

Manufacture - NOVACAP

Part Number - ES2211N(value)K502NXT

Recommended Resistor: The resistors are 75 ohms 1/8 watt.

**Recommended Ethernet Modular Jack:** The recommended jack is an eight contact, eight position, unshielded and ungrounded connector that will maintain the need isolation and spacing requirements. A shielded and grounded connector may be used, but special consideration must be made for the isolation and spacing requirements.

Manufacture - Stewart Connector Systems

Part Number - SS-6488-NF-K1

Note: These SocketEthernet parts are RoHS compliant.

# The Windows-Based Auto-Discovery Manager

The Auto-Discovery Manager is a mechanism for remotely monitoring the Universal IP functioning. It also provides support for configuring several key parameters, such as DHCP Status (enable/disable), IP Address, and the Host Name of an MT100SEM-IP

The Auto-Discovery mechanism is utilized by running a Windows-based Server Application that can monitor/configure the MT100SEM-IP. Communication between the MT100SEM-IP and the Windows-based Server is through MAC level broadcasts on a configured UDP port.

Two Ways to Use Auto Discovery: Auto-Discovery can be performed by using AT Commands (see the Universal IP AT Commands Reference Guide – included on the Universal Kit CD) or by using the Auto-Discover Manager Software (also included on the Universal Kit CD).

### Auto-Discovery Manager Software

The Auto-Discovery Manager is composed of two components:

- The Client Component The Client component periodically broadcasts its current configuration over the network
- The Server Component The Server component receives the broadcasts from the client.

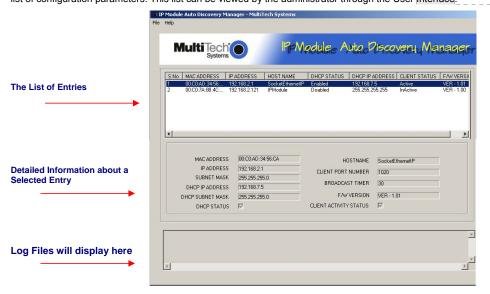
#### **Client Component**

The Auto-Discovery Client component is integrated with MT100SEM-IP. It broadcasts its current configuration over the network on a specific UDP SERVER-PORT. By default the SERVER-PORT is set to 1020. The configuration parameters broadcast are

- · Version details
- MAC Address
- Static IP Address
- DHCP Status
- DHCP Assigned IP Address
- Host Name
- Broadcast interval
- · Port number on which the client listens

### Server Component

The Server component listens on the SERVER-PORT. It receives the broadcasts from the client and updates the list of configuration parameters. This list can be viewed by the administrator through the User Interface:



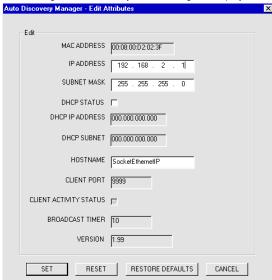
Comment [DAR77]: Auto Discovery Screen1.jpg (jpg was smaller than png) 184KB. CurrentProj\_Universal\_Guide\_2009\_ Rev\_J\Graphics\Auto Discovery for Universal

#### How to View the Detailed Information

New entries are appended to the list shown on the screen above. Only the first ten entries are displayed on the screen. However the administrator can scroll down to view more entries. Clicking on an entry displays the detailed information about that entry.

#### How to Edit the List and Make the Changes Permanent

- 1. Double-click on the entry you wish to edit.
- 2. After clicking the desired entry, a new dialog box displays showing the current configuration.



Comment [DAR78]: Auto Discovery Screen2.png 12KB. CurrentProj\_Universal\_Guide\_2009\_ Rev\_J\Graphics\Auto Discovery for Universal

Enter the new parameters and click the SET button. The server sends the modified parameters to the client.

Upon receiving the broadcast from the Server, the Client validates the packet. The Client determines whether the packet is destined for its own MAC Address. If so, it sets the modified parameters that are different from its current configuration, and the it broadcast the newly configured parameters.

The Client Status is set to Active upon the receipt of a broadcast packet.

The Client Status is made **Inactive** if there is no request from the client for a stipulated period. (3 \* periodic timer value).

# How to Set the Parameters to the Previous Configuration

When the **RESET** button is clicked, the parameters are set to the defaults received. In other words, **RESET** is similar to **UNDO** (it sets the modifications to the previous ones).

#### Saving the Log

The logs can be saved to a file. They are spooled into the third part of the window in the main dialog box. To save the log: Select **File > Save Log As**.

# Chapter 11 - SocketWireless<sup>®</sup> Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup> (MT810SWM-IP)

# Introduction

The SocketWireless® Wi-Fi® device server connects serial devices to an IP network via 802.11b/g wireless networking. It enables you to build wireless networking into virtually any device allowing for remote monitoring, control and configuration. The space efficient communications device (1" x 2.5") integrates a complete TCP/IP protocol stack. It can make your existing and next generation device, machine or system, IP-ready while you focus on developing its core features.

# Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order this Product
MT810SWM-IP	802.11b/g Wi-Fi Device Server with IP, 5V	Regional	
MT810SWM-L-IP	802.11b/g Wi-Fi Device Server with IP, 3.3V	Regional	
Developer Kit			
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Regional	

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

IP TCP/IP Stack

L 3.3V

UDK Universal Developer Kit

#### **Other Product Codes:**

The complete product code may end in **.Rx**. For example, MT810SWM-IP.Rx "R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

# AT Commands Reference Guide

Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. provides documentation of AT Commands for each embedded module. These AT Command Reference Guides are available on the CD included in the Developer Kit and are also available by request. Send an email to <a href="mailto:oemsales@multitech.com">oemsales@multitech.com</a> to request the copy you desire.

1			Voice Commands
	Multi-Tech's Universal IP AT Command Reference Guide (\$000426x)	NA	NA

# Technical Specifications

The SocketWireless Wi-Fi meets the following specifications:

Category	Description
Wireless Specifications	
WLAN Standard	IEEE 802.11b/g Wi-Fi
Frequency Range	2.400 to 2.484 GHz
Data Rate	1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48 & 54Mbps
Maximum Transmit Power	15 dBm
Receiver Sensitivity	-82 dBm (with PER < 8%)
Security	64/128 bit WEP, WPA-PSK, WPA2, WPA2-PSK
Mode	Ad Hoc, Infrastructure
Antenna Connector	UFL
Serial Interface	
Data Format	Serial, asynchronous
Data Rate	Software selectable: 1200 bps to 921.6K bps
Data Bits	7 or 8 data bits, 0 or 1 stop bits
Parity	Odd, even, none
Flow Control	RTS/CTS (Hardware), None
Network Protocol Support	
Protocols Supported	ARP, DHCP Client, DNS Client, FTP Client, ICMP (PING), IP, POP3 Client, SMTP Client, TCP Client & Server, UDP Client & Server
Power Requirements*	
Supply Voltage	3.3VDC or 5VDC
Power Usage	Typical – 400mA @ 3.3VDC, 240mA @ 5VDC
Environmental	
Operating Temperature	-30° to +70° C
Storage Temperature	-40° to +85° C
Humidity	20% to 90% (non-condensing)
Physical Description	
Dimensions	2.541" L x 1.045" W x 0.680" H
	(6.45 cm x 2.65 cm x 1.7 cm)
Weight	0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.)
Certifications, Approvals, War	ranty
Certifications	Safety Certifications UL 60950-1 cUL 60950-1 IEC 60950-1 IEC 60950-1 EMC Certifications FCC Part 15 Subpart C Canada RSS-210 EN 300 328 EN 301 489-17
Warranty	Two years

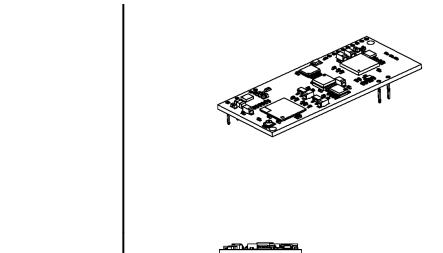
Comment [DAR79]: Updated list by Dustin for Rev. K

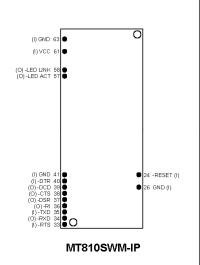
# **Technical Specifications Continued**

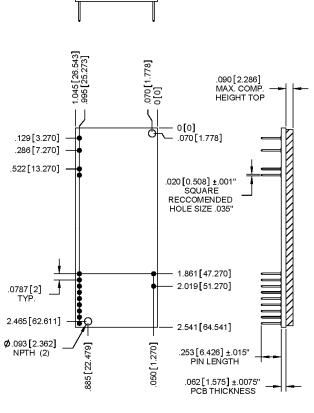
Intelligent Features	
Features	Command line configuration through serial interface AT Command compatible System firmware upgraded through serial port. Over the air firmware upgrade Command line configuration through TELNET

# Mechanical Drawings

Comment [DAR80]: Vault Data 363 -- 9/2/09



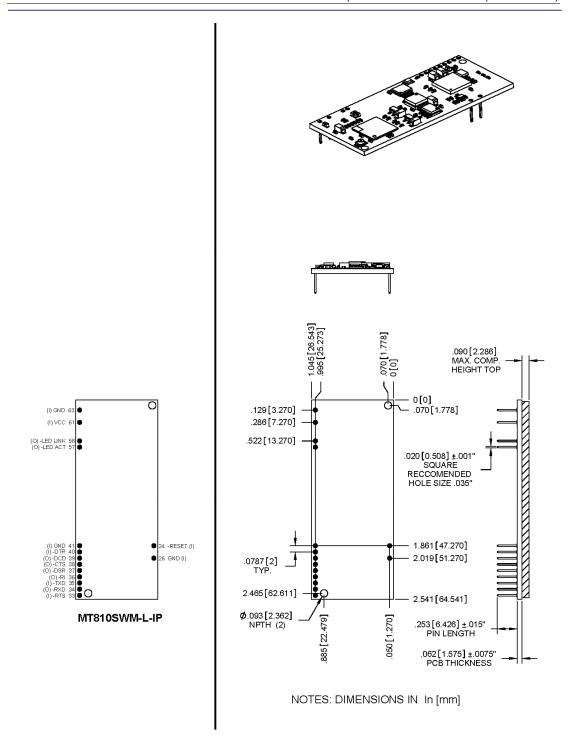




NOTES: DIMENSIONS IN In [mm]

# Mechanical Drawings

Comment [DAR81]: Vault Data 363 -- 9/2/09



Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. Universal Socket Hardware Guide for Developers (S000342L)

# Operating Conditions

# In Volts

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Supply Range - Vcc	3.3V = 3.15	3.3V = 3.45
	5V = 4.75	5V = 5.25

# Absolute Maximum Rating

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Voltage at any signal pin	GND - 0.3V	Vcc + 0.3V

# DC Electrical Characteristics

For 5V and 3.3V

	Units (Volts)	
Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Digital Signal Input Low Level	GND	0.8V
Digital Signal Input High Level	2.0V	Vcc
Digital Signal Output Low Level	NA	0.4V
Digital Signal Output High Level	2.4V	NA
Reset (Low Active) Input Low	GND	0.8V
Reset (Low Active) Input High	2.0V	Vcc
Digital Input Capacitance	5pf	

# Power Measurements\*

# MT810SWM-IP Measured Power at Input Voltage: 3.3 Volts

	Idle	Typical	Maximum
Current (AMPS)	0.057	0.180	0.260
Watts	0.182	0.531	0.764

# MT810SWM-IP Measured Power at Input Voltage: 5.00 Volts

	Idle	Typical	Maximum
Current (AMPS)	0.056	0.193	0.260
Watts	0.274	0.897	1.196

\* Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer into their power source when determining product load.

Comment [DAR82]: The voltages came from Tom Fix on Sept 25, 2009. I put in the guide on 10/16/09.

# Application Notes

# RF Interface

#### Radio Characteristics

Frequency	2402 – 2480MHz
Modulation	DSSS
Number of Channels	1 to 14
Transmission Rate	1, 2, 5.5, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbps
RF Receive Sensitivity	-82dBm typical
RF Transmit Power	15 dBm

# Default Power Up Settings

Baud Rate = 115200 bps
Data Bits = 8 bits
Parity = None
Stop bits = 1 bit
Hardware Flow Control RTS/CTS = Disabled

# Antenna Requirements and Sources

Frequency Range	2.4 - 2.5 GHz
Impedance	50 ohm nominal
VSWR	<2.0:1
Gain	5 dBi
Radiation	Omni
Polarization	Vertical
Connector	Reverse Polarity SMA Plug
ROHS Compliant	YES

# Antenna Source for Wi-Fi

The antenna can be ordered from the following manufacturer:

Aristotle Enterprises http://www.aristotle.com.tw/

Part Number Description

RFA-02-5-F7M3 2.4 GHz 5dBi Swi-Reverse-F Antenna

#### **Antenna Cable and Connector**

See Chapter 1 for Antenna System details. Note that the cable for the Wi-Fi SocketModem has a reverse polarity SMA plug.

# **Approved Antenna Cable Parts**

GC Protronics 20930C Samtec ASP-116785-01 Coax Cable RG-178/U

# Regulatory Requirements for the Wi-Fi Antenna

This section covers how to use the modular transmitter in order to maintain the modular transmitter approval and RF exposure compliance.

#### Conditions to Satisfy Modular Transmitter Approval

This device is intended only for use by OEM integrators under the following 3 conditions:

- 1. The antenna must be installed such that 20 cm is maintained between the antenna and the end user for all installations.
- 2 The transmitter module may not be located with any other transmitter or antenna.
- The communications device is approved using the FCC "unlicensed modular transmitter approval" method. Therefore, the communication device must only be used with the originally approved

As long as the 3 conditions above are met, further transmitter testing will not be required. However, the OEM integrator is still responsible for testing their end-product for any additional compliance requirements with this communication device installed (for example, digital device emissions, PC peripheral requirements, etc.)

IMPORTANT NOTE: In the event that any of these conditions CANNOT be met (for example certain laptop configurations, location with another transmitter, or use of a different type antenna), then the FCC authorization for the communications device is no longer considered valid and the FCC ID CANNOT be used on the final product. In these circumstances, the OEM integrator will be responsible for re-evaluating the end product (including the transmitter) and obtaining a separate FCC authorization.

#### RF Exposure Statements Developers Must Include in the User Manual for End Users

The user manual for consumers must include the following information in a prominent location:

IMPORTANT NOTE: To comply with FCC RF safety exposure limits, the antenna used for this transmitter must be installed to provide a separation distance of at least 20 cm from all persons and must not be located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

# Regulatory Requirements for End Product Labeling

# Suggested End Product Labeling

This transmitter module is authorized only for use in devices where the antenna may be installed in such a way that 20 cm may be maintained between the antenna and the users (for example access points, routers, wireless ASDL modems, and similar equipment). The final end product must be labeled in a visible area on the exterior of the enclosure with the following or similar text: "Contains TX FCC ID: AU792U07B06821".

# FCC & IC Information to Consumers

The user manual for the consumer must contain the statements required by the following FCC and IC regulations: 47 C.F.R. 15.19(a)(3), 15.21, 15.101 and RSS-Gen Issue 2 dated June 2007, Sections 7.1.4 and 7.1.5.

#### Additional Information That Must Be Provided to OEM Integrators

The end user should NOT be provided any instructions on how to remove or install the modular transmitter.

# Chapter 12 - SocketWireless® Bluetooth® (MTS2BTSMI)

# Introduction

The Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. SocketWireless® with Bluetooth®-enabled technology allows developers to establish wireless networks using a special set of AT commands. The SocketWireless with Bluetooth technology makes the cable-replacement transition to wireless networks seamless and easy.

This chapter explains how to establish Bluetooth communication between two serial devices for data applications in a point-to-point network. Bluetooth-enabled devices create communication-ready devices by integrating data functionality into a single, universal socket design. This complete, ready-to-integrate device dramatically reduces development time and costs for system designers.

# Notes about Byte Gaps and Data Latency

Because of the way Bluetooth is designed and operates, random byte gaps of 5 ms to 20 ms are common. Packet size will vary from transmission to transmission.

Although the serial band frequency operates up to 920K bps, effective data throughput in fast streaming mode is approximately 200K bps. Effective data throughput in regular data mode is 60K bps. The reason for the slower speed in regular mode is due to the AT parser, which looks at each character for ASCII valid command scripts in the regular mode's data stream.

The SocketWireless RX has very limited buffering, so if you do not use hardware flow control and are transmitting further distances, you will quickly overflow the 50 byte buffer because of RF retransmissions, etc.

When a Bluetooth connection is made, the SocketWireless device goes into regular data mode per the power-up factory default settings. This enables the user to configure the SocketWireless settings remotely via a remote RF Bluetooth connection. Basically, you can setup the SocketWireless device so no commands are required to be sent from the embedded side of the device. This allows seamless interfacing with legacy systems without the need to modify the host device

# Product Build Options and Ordering Information

Product	Description	Region	Order this Product
MTS2BTSMI	Embedded Serial-to-Bluetooth, C1, 5V	Global	
MTS2BTSMI-L	Embedded Serial-to-Bluetooth, C1, 3.3V	Global	
Developer Kit			
MTSMI-UDK	Universal Developer Kit	Global	

#### How to Read the Product Codes in the Table Above:

C1 Class 1 Bluetooth

3.3V

UDK Universal Developer Kit

# Other Product Codes:

The complete product code may end in .Rx. For example, MTS2BTSMI-L.R2.

"R" indicates product revision. "x" is the revision number.

# AT Commands Reference Guide

	Reference Guides Title and Document Product Number	Fax Commands	Voice Commands
SocketWireless Bluetooth	SocketWireless Bluetooth AT Commands	NA	NA
(MTS2BTSMI)	Reference Guide (S000360x)		

# Technical Specifications

The SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI) meets the following specifications:

Category	Description		
Standard	Class 1 Bluetooth V2.0 compliant		
	<b>Note:</b> For Bluetooth protocol V2.0, the circuit board I/O pin 7 now controls flow control.		
	In V1.2, circuit board I/O pin 3 controlled flow control. V2.0 now supports multipoint		
	connections.		
Frequency Range	2402 to 2480 MHz (2.402 to 2.480 GHz)		
Data Format	For Serial Interface - Asynchronous		
Serial Speeds	Supports speeds from 1200 bps to 920K bps		
Flow Control	Hardware		
Output Level (Class 1)	20dBm maximum		
Modes of Operation	Inquiry, Idle, Data, Fast Data, Park, Sniff, Command, Master, Slave		
Device Profiles	Serial Port (SPP), Dial-up Network (DUN)		
Buffer	Serial 50 bytes		
	RF 50-byte RX buffer		
Weight	0.6 oz. (0.017 kg.)		
Power Measurements	Idle: 1.5mA @ 3.3VDC 1.6mA @ 5VDC		
	Master Connected: 6mA @ 3.3VDC 7mA @ 5VDC		
	Fast Data: 21mA @ 3.3VDC 38mA @ 5VDC		
	Master Inquiry: 68mA @ 3.3VDC 74mA @ 5VDC		
	<b>Notes:</b> These power measurements were taken with no LEDs connected.		
	Driving an LED through 330 ohm resistor to GND draws an		
	additional 4mA on 5V for each LED.		
	Note: Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. recommends that the customer incorporate a 10% buffer		
	into their power source when determining product load.		
Operating Temperature	-40° to +70° C		
Storage Temperature	-40° to +85° C		
Humidity	20% to 90% (non-condensing)		
Operating Voltage	5VDC or 3.3VDC		
3 1 13	Minimum and Maximum Voltage: 3.3VDC ± 0.1V & < 10mVp-p noise		
	5VDC ± 0.1V & < 10mVp-p noise		
Certifications &	Safety Certifications:		
Approvals	UL 60950		
Approvato	cUL 60950		
	EN 60950		
	AS/NZS 60950:2000		
	EMC Approvals:		
	FCC Part 15.247:2004 (subpart C)		
	EN 301 489-1 V1.4.1 (2002-08)		
Intelligent Features	Can be configured, commanded, and controlled through simple ASCII strings over the		
intelligent reatures	Bluetooth RF link or directly through the hardware serial UART.		
	Low power consumption.		
	Secure and robust communication link.		
	FHSS (Frequent Hopping Spread Spectrum)		
	56-bit encryption, and 10 alphanumeric Personal Identification Number (PIN)		
	Error correction schemes for guaranteed packet delivery		
	Operating System independent		
	AT command software interface		
	LED driver outputs for visual monitoring speed, link, activity, collision, and duplex mode.		
	Auto connect.		
	Supports multipoint connections.		
Warranty	Two years		

# SocketWireless Bluetooth Pin Out

Note: The bolded, shaded pins are the active SocketWireless pins.

(I/O) Tip (I/O) Tip 1 (I/O) Ring 2 Safety Void 3 (O) TX+ 4 (O) TX- 5 (I) RX- 6 (I) RX+ 7 Safety Void 8 GND (O) MICV (I) 00000000 0 × 0 0 0 0 × VCC (I) -LED SPD (O) -LED COL (O) -LED LINK (O) -LED ACT (O) -LED FDX (O) (O) TXCLK 11 (O) RXCLK 12 0 Universal Socket 13 000 GPIO (I/O) GPIO (I/O) GPIO (I/O) 15 16 SocketWireless Bluetooth MTS2BTSMI 0 GPIO (I/O) 18 19 19 20 21 (I) Mic+ 22 (I) Mic- 23 (I) -Reset 24 (I) USB\_VBUS 25 (I) GND 26 (I/O) USB\_DP 27 (I/O) USB\_DD 28 (O) LED DCD 29 SPK+ (O) SPK- (O) GND (I) 000000 00000000 -DTR (I) -DCD (O) -CTS (O) -DSR (O) 00000 (O) LED DCD 29 (O) LED RX 30 -RI (O) -TXD (I) -RXD (O) -RTS (I) (O) LED DTR 31 (O) LED TX 32

Top View - SocketWireless Bluetooth Pin Out

For pin descriptions, see the Universal Pin Out Descriptions in Chapter 1.

# DC Electrical Characteristics

# 5V Serial SocketWireless

5VDC Characteristics (VDD = 5V ± 0.25V) VDDMAX = 5.25V

Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
-RESET (24)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
Input Capacitance			15 pF
Outputs	Output High	Output Low	Current Drive
-DCD (39), -CTS (38), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	Min 4V / 2.4V	Max 0.5V / 0.5V (5V / 3.3V)	3.2mA, 7.0mA for TXD

# 3.3V Serial SocketWireless

# 3.3VDC Characteristics (VDD = 3.3V ± 0.3V) VDDMAX = 3.6V

3.3VDC Characteristics (VDD = 3.3V ± 0.3V) VDDIMAX = 3.0V			
Inputs	Input High	Input Low	
-DTR (40), -TXD (35), -RTS (33)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
-RESET (24)	Min 2.0V	Max 0.8V	
Input Capacitance			15 pF
Outputs	Output High	Output Low	<b>Current Drive</b>
-DCD (39), -CTS (38), -RI (36), -RXD (34)	Min 2.4V	Max 0.5V / 0.5V (5V / 3.3V)	3.2mA, 7.0mA for TXD

# Application Notes

# RF Interface

#### Radio Characteristics

Frequency	2402 – 2480MHz
Modulation	FHSS/GFSK
Channel Intervals	1MHz
Number of Channels	79CH
Transmission Rate	721Kbps
RF Receive Sensitivity	-80dBm typical
RF Range	Class 1 - 100 meters (330 feet)

# Sources for Peripheral Devices

# Antenna Requirements

Frequency Range	2.4-2.5 GHz
Impedance	50 ohm nominal
VSWR	<2.0:1
Gain	2 dBi
Radiation	Omni
Polarization	Vertical
Wave	Dipole ½ Wave
Connector	Reverse Polarity SMA Plug

# Antenna Source

#### Bluetooth Antenna Available from Multi-Tech:

Part Number Description

ANBT-1HRA Hinged Right Angle 2.5 GHz ½ Wave Reverse Polarity Antenna

Bluetooth antennas also can be ordered from the following manufacturers. For the manufacturers listed without specific part numbers, be sure to select the antenna that meets the requirements listed above.

http://nearson.com (part number S131AH-2450S)

http://www.ead-ltd.com

http://www.centurion.com

http://www.mobilemark.com

http://woken.com

### **Antenna Cable and Connector**

See Chapter 1 for Antenna System details. Note that the cable for the Wi-Fi SocketModem has a reverse polarity SMA plug.

#### Approved Antenna Cable Parts

GC Protronics 20930C Samtec ASP-116785-01 Coax Cable RG-178/U

# Default Power Up Settings

AT Command Response Form = Long Form Bluetooth Service Profile = Serial Port Profile {SPP}

Device Role = Slave

Baud Rate = 9600bps

Data Bits = 8 bits

Parity = None Stop bits = 1 bit

Hardware Flow Control RTS/CTS = Enabled

Power Mode = Never go into deep sleep mode

Country Code = North America and Europe

Name of Device (local name) = SocketWireless

My Radio Status = 1,0 {slave, disconnected}

Service Name = COM0

Power up default ATSW24 settings = 0,0,0,0 {long response, no authentication, no auto SCO connect, no minor}

Power up default ATSW25 settings = 0,1,0,0 {slave, data, allow data to pass, SPP}

Major & Minor Class Of Device (COD) = 00000000 {undefined}

Security PIN and Encryption Disabled

Default PIN = "default" caps sensitive so do not use any capital letters

# Important Security PIN Note:

Do not forget your PIN. Write it down. If you forget it, there is no way it can be retrieved from the device or the software. You will have to buy a new SocketWireless Bluetooth and start over.

Page Scan Interval = 0x400 {2560msec.}

Page Scan Window = 0x200 {11msec.}

Inquiry Scan Interval = 0x400 {2560msec.}

Inquiry Scan Window = 0x200 {11msec.}

**Timeout Connection Parameters** 

Inquiry = 60 seconds

Slave Connect = 60 seconds

Master Connect = 60 seconds

ATDM idle mode = 60 seconds

ATDM Master Mode = indefinitely (need to perform ATUCL to cancel last command)

Timeout for loss of Bluetooth connection = 4 seconds

# Example of a Master Discovery/Connection Sequence

#### From Power Up and No Connection

1. Verify local device is Master in Data Mode.

**Sent:** ATSi,7 <cr> **Reply:** <cr\_lf>1,1,0,0 <cr\_lf>

2. If not Master, set to Master and Data Mode.

**Sent:** ATSW25,1,1,0,0 <cr> **Reply:** <cr\_lf>OK<cr\_lf>

3. Perform an Inquiry to obtain BT Address (unless it is already known).

Sent: ATUCL<cr> // Clears radio state and places in Idle Mode

Sent: ATUCL<cr>
Reply: <cr\_lf>OK<cr\_lf>

Sent: ATDI,1,00000000 {Class of Device}<cr> // Looks for only one Bluetooth device

Reply: <cr\_lf>00A0961F2023,00000104,Socket Wireless<cr\_lf>

<cr\_lf>DONE<cr\_lf>

4. Perform a Master Connect over SPP using the BT Address.

**Sent:** ATDM, 00A0961F2023,1101<cr> // SPP connection

Reply: <cr\_lf>CONNECT,00A0961F008F <cr\_lf> // Returns Slave BT address radios is in Data Mode

5. Place radio into Fast Data Mode.

Sent: ATMF<cr> // Places radio in Fast Data Mode

Reply: <cr\_lf>OK<cr\_lf>

6. Send Data.

**Note:** When sending commands from the Slave when the Slave connects in Fast Data Mode (ATSW25/or issuing ATMF). All valid AT commands are sent through the Slaves UART will be interpreted and responded by the Master radio as if it was the local Slave radio. Basically in this configuration from the Slave end you can obtain status and configure from the remote Master radio. This is a unique feature that may be useful in some applications but can confuse the user if you think you are talking to the local Slave UART.

#### To Get Out of Data Mode and Check Status:

- 1. Delay at least 50 milliseconds; this could be less or more.
- 2. Get into Command Mode.

Sent: +++<cr> // Default escape sequence of characters

Reply: <cr\_lf>OK<cr\_lf>

3. Check Status

Sent: AT<cr>

Reply: <cr\_lf>OK<cr\_lf>

4. Or send any AT Command example:

Sent: ATSI,0<cr>

Reply: <cr\_lf>SocketWireless AT<cr\_lf>

### Example of a Slave Command Sequence

#### From Power Up:

1. Check and verify Communication to Slave.

Sent: AT<cr>

Reply: <cr\_lf>OK<cr\_lf>

2. Get information on Slave Bluetooth address.

Sent: ATSi,1<cr>
Reply: 12-digit address
<cr\_lf>OK<cr\_lf>

3. Set Slave to automatically connect in Fast Data Mode on Bluetooth connection.

**Sent:** ATSW25,0,0,0,0 <cr> **Reply:** <cr\_lf>OK<cr\_lf>

4. Either cycle power or send ATURST.

**Note:** This command sequence assumes the radio is in factory default in which it automatically comes up and is connectable as a Slave from a Master request.

# Disabling Flow Control Using AT Commands

#### **Protocol Change:**

For Bluetooth protocol V2.0, the circuit board I/O pin 7 now controls flow control.

Previous Protocol V1.2 New Protocol V2.0 ATSW22.3.x.x ATSW22.7.x.x ATSW23,3,x,x ATSW23,7,x,x

#### **Disabling Flow Control Using Protocol V.2.0**

Using a terminal screen with flow control enabled, issue commands to turn off flow control.

**Sent:** ATSW22,7,1,0 <cr> // Set PIO7 as output and do not store in flash

Reply: OK<cr\_lf> **Sent:** ATSW23,7,1,0<cr> // Set PIO7 output high and do not store in flash

Reply: OK<cr If> To store the setting in flash:

> **Sent:** ATSW22,7,1,1<cr> // Set PIO7 as output and store in flash

Reply: OK<cr\_lf>
Sent: ATSW23,7,1,1<cr> // Set PIO7 output high and store in flash

Reply: OK<cr\_lf>

Now you can communicate with the Bluetooth device with flow control turned off.

# Other Examples

See the Bluetooth AT Commands Reference Guide for other examples:

- Multipoint Example Using the SocketWireless MTS2BTSMI or the Bluetooth Adapter MT2BTA One Slave and Four Master Devices.
- Multipoint Example Using the SocketWireless MTS2BTSMI or the Bluetooth Adapter MT2BTA One Master and Four Slave Devices.
- Repeater Example Using the SocketWireless MTS2BTSMI or the Bluetooth Adapter MT2BTA.

# Changing Configuration

Parameters, such as the Bluetooth Name, Service Name, Class of Device, and Serial Port settings can be viewed and configured. This can be done locally through the serial port UART or from a remote Bluetooth RF link. To configure the SocketWireless Bluetooth device, the device must be in command mode by issuing +++.

You can use the developer board and the RS-232 cable to connect to a PC and pass ASCII characters through the terminal to the SocketWireless Bluetooth device. The communications settings should match the settings used when the SocketWireless Bluetooth device connects. For example, the defaults are:

9600bps

8 bits

No Parity 1 stop bit

Hardware flow control enabled.

Once you change these parameters, you have the option to store them permanently in the non-volatile memory. Run your favorite terminal emulator, HyperTerminal, or other program.

- Type AT on your screen and follow it with a carriage return <cr If>. You should see "OK" returned to you. This will verify that your cable and communications settings are correct. When the SocketWireless device is not connected to another Bluetooth device, you can type the AT commands directly into the SocketWireless' UART; e.g., you do not have to type +++ to change from data mode to command mode.
- Now you can enter any of the AT commands discussed in the following sections. Follow these commands by <cr\_lf>. Valid commands will return an "OK" or a valid response. Invalid commands will reply ERROR.
- To return to data mode, type ATMD. You can now pass or receive data from a remote connected Bluetooth

#### Notes:

- If you change communications parameter settings, remember to change your terminal or emulator communications settings to correspond to the newly created parameter settings.
- AT commands will not echo back to the terminal.

# Index

Activation procedures		NAM74
Activation procedures 37 Activation procedures 37 Activation procedures 37 Alterna system. 34 AT Commands Reference Guides 5 SocketHodem (MT2492SM). 37 SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E and ED). 76 SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E and ED). 76 SocketModem BDGP (MTSMC-H). 48 SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTSDETSMI). 64 SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTSDETSMI). 64 SMS. 37 SocketModem BDGP (MTSMC-H). 35 SocketModem (MT3692SM). 37 SocketModem (MT3692SM)	7	
Activation procedures	A	
Antenna system	Activation procedures 37	
AT Commands Reference Guides SocketModem (P MT100SEM-IP) SocketModem (MT249SSM) SocketModem (MT249SSM) SocketModem (MT249SSM) SocketModem (MT249SSM) SocketModem (MT590SSM) SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C) SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-G) Family) SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-H) SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-H) SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-H) SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-H) SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSM) SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP) SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP) SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP) SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP) SocketModem Splay (MTSBTSM) SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP) SocketWireless Bluetooth (MT924SSMI) SocketWodem	*	OTASP75
Socket/Lebrenet IP (MT100SEM-IP)		PDU75
SocketModem (MT249SSM1-22)		PN Offset75
SocketModem (MT492SM1)		P-REV75
SocketModem (MT934SMI)		PRI75
SocketModem (MT9234SMI)		PRL75
SocketModem CDIR & CEMITSMC-CD 67		PSTN75
SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E and EI)		RF75
SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E and E1)		RSSI
SocketModem HSDPA (MTSMC-H)		R-UIM75
SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSM)		SID
SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP)   155		SIM75
## Auto-Discovery Manager   153  ## Baud Rate Dip Switch Settings for HDSPA   94   ## Bouck Diagram   23   ## Bluetooth Example of a Master Discovery/Connection   54   ## Country/Regional Codes   45   ## Country/Regional Codes   45		SMS75
## Changing the Quad Band		TA/TE75
Baud Rate Dip Switch Settings for HDSPA	Tuto Discovery Hanager	Changing the Quad Band65
Baud Rate Dip Switch Settings for HDSPA	_	China's Administrative Measures on the Control of
Baud Rate Dip Switch Settings for HDSPA	В	Pollution54
Description		Connectivity Features
Date		Country/Regional Codes45
Bluetooth Example of a Master Discovery/Connection Sequence   169 Bluetooth Example of a Slave Command Sequence   169 Bluetooth technology   164   SocketModem (MT2492SMI)   139   SocketModem (MT5692SMI)   121   SocketModem (MT934SSMI)   105   SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C)   71   SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-EI)   82   SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-EI)		
Sequence		D
DC Electrical Characteristics   SocketEthernet IP (MT100SEM-IP)   150   SocketModem (MT2492SMI)   139   SocketModem (MT2492SMI)   139   SocketModem (MT2492SMI)   121   SocketModem (MT592SMI)   105   SocketModem (MT592SMI)   105   SocketModem (MT9245SMI)   105   SocketModem (MTSMC-C)   71   SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C)   71   SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-EI)   82   SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-H)   90   SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-H)   9	*	D
Bluetooth technology		DC Electrical Characteristics
SocketModem (MT2492SMI)   139	*	
SocketModem (MT5692SMI)   121		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
C         SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C)         11           SODMA Terminology         74         SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-G)         71           3G         74         SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E1)         82           3G         74         SocketModem HSDPA (MTSMC-H)         90           3G         74         SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI)         166           CDMA         74         Default Power Up Settings for Bluetooth         168           CDMA         74         Default Power Up Settings for MT810SWM-IP         162           cdma2000         74         Design Considerations         16           cdma2000 1xRTT         74         Developer Board         21           cdma2000 1xRTT         74         Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           ESN.         74         F           Headset Path         74         F           Headset Path         74         F           IS-95         74         Electrical Characteristics           IS-2000         74         SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)         144           IS-95         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95B         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46 <td>Board Components</td> <td></td>	Board Components	
CDMA Terminology         SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C)         71           2G         74         SocketModem Cell & icell (MTSMC-G2 Family)         58           3G         74         SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E1)         82           3G         74         SocketModem HSDPA (MTSMC-H)         90           CBM         74         Default Power Up Settings for Bluetooth         168           CDMA         74         Default Power Up Settings for MT810SWM-IP         162           cdma2000         1xRTT         74         Developer Board         21           cdma2000 1xRTT         74         Developer Board         21           cdma2001 1xRTT         74         Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           ESN.         74         E           Handset Path         74         E           Headset Path         74         E           IOTA         74         E           IS-2000         74         Electrical Characteristics           IS-2000         74         Electromagnetic Interference Considerations         17           IS-95A         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95B         74         EMC Requirements for Indust		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
SocketModem Cell & iCell (MTSMC-G2 Family)   .58	C	
SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E1)   82		
2G	CDMA Terminology	
3G         74         SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI)         166           CBM         74         Default Power Up Settings for Bluetooth         168           CDMA         74         Default Power Up Settings for Bluetooth         168           Cdma2000         74         Default Power Up Settings for MT810SWM-IP         162           Cdma2000 1xRTT         74         Default Power Up Settings for MT810SWM-IP         162           ESN         74         Default Power Up Settings for Bluetooth         168           ESN         74         Default Power Up Settings for Bluetooth         168           Beleatting in Considerations         16         168           Developer Board         21         21           Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           E         E         E           INT         T4         E           INT         T4         E           INT         E         E <td>2G74</td> <td></td>	2G74	
CBM         74         Default Power Up Settings for Bluetooth         168           CDMA         74         Default Power Up Settings for MT810SWM-IP         162           cdma2000 1xRTT         74         Design Considerations         16           cdma2000 1xRTT         74         Developer Board         21           cdmaONE         74         Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           ESN         74         Electrical Characteristics         24, 26, 27, 28           ISSN         74         Electrical Characteristics         25           ISSN         74         Electrical Characteristics         SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)         144           IS-2000         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95A         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46           IS-95B         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46           MCC         74         F           MDN         74         F           MIN         74         F           MIN         74         F           MIN         74         F <tr< td=""><td>3G74</td><td></td></tr<>	3G74	
CDMA         74         Default Power Up Settings for MT810SWM-IP         162           cdma2000         74         Design Considerations         16           cdma2000 1xRTT         74         Developer Board         21           cdmaONE         74         Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           ESN         74         Total Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           Handset Path         74         Total Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           Instruction of Estings for MT810SWM-IP         162         Design Considerations         16           Instruction of Estings for MT810SWM-IP         162         Developer Board         21           Instruction of Estings for MT810SWM-IP         162         Developer Board         21           Instruction of Estings for MT810SWM-IP         16         Developer Board         21           Instruction of Estings for MT810SWM-IP         16         Developer Board         21           Instruction of Estings for MT810SWM-IP         26         Developer Board         21           Instruction of Estings for MT810SWM-IP         26         Esting for Mr810SWM-IP         26           Instruction of Estings for MT810SWM-IP         Esting for Mr810SW         Esting for Mr810SW         24, 26, 27     <	CBM74	
cdma2000.         74         Design Considerations.         16           cdma2000 1xRTT         74         Developer Board         21           cdmaONE         74         Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           ESN         74         Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           Handset Path         74         F           Headset Path         74         E           IMSI         74         E           IS-2000         74         SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)         144           IS-707         74         Electromagnetic Interference Considerations         17           IS-95         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95A         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46           IS-95B         74         EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance         46           MCC         74         F           MIN         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MNC         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MS         74         Firmware Upgrade         29 <t< td=""><td>CDMA74</td><td></td></t<>	CDMA74	
cdma2000 1xRTT         74         Developer Board         21           cdmaONE         74         Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           ESN         74         Headset Path         74           Headset Path         74         E           IMSI         74         Electrical Characteristics           IS-2000         74         SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)         144           IS-707         74         Electromagnetic Interference Considerations         17           IS-95         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95A         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46           IS-95B         74         EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance         46           MCC         74         F           MIN         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MNC         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MSM         74         Firmware Upgrade         29           Flash Programming Protocol         31	cdma200074	
cdmaONE         74         Developer Board Schematics         24, 26, 27, 28           ESN         74         Handset Path         74           Headset Path         74         E           IMSI         74         Electrical Characteristics           IS-2000         74         Electromagnetic Interference Considerations         17           IS-900         74         Electromagnetic Interference Considerations         17           IS-95         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95A         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46           IS-95B         74         EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance         46           MCC         74           MIN         74         F           MNC         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MNC         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MSM         74         Firmware Upgrade         29           Flash Programming Protocol         31	cdma2000 1xRTT74	
ESN	cdmaONE74	
Headset Path	ESN74	Developer Board Schematics24, 20, 21, 28
IMSI         74           IOTA         74           IS-2000         74         Electrical Characteristics           IS-2000         74         SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)         144           IS-707         74         Electromagnetic Interference Considerations         17           IS-95         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95A         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46           IS-95B         74         EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance         46           MCC         74           MDN         74         F           MIN         74         F           MNC         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MO         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MSM         74         Firmware Upgrade         29           MT         74         Flash Programming Protocol         31	Handset Path74	
IOTA         74         Electrical Characteristics           IS-2000         74         SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)         144           IS-707         74         Electromagnetic Interference Considerations         17           IS-95         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95A         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46           IS-95B         74         EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance         46           MCC         74           MDN         74         F           MIN         74         F           MNC         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MO         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MSM         74         Firmware Upgrade         29           MT         74         Flash Programming Protocol         31	Headset Path74	$oldsymbol{E}$
IS-2000         74         SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)         144           IS-707         74         Electromagnetic Interference Considerations         17           IS-95         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95A         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46           IS-95B         74         EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance         46           MCC         74           MIN         74         F           MIN         74         F           MNC         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MO         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MSM         74         Firmware Upgrade         29           MT         74         Flash Programming Protocol         31	IMSI74	
IS-707         74         Electromagnetic Interference Considerations         17           IS-95         74         Electrostatic Discharge Control         17           IS-95A         74         EMC Requirements for Industry Canada         46           IS-95B         74         EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance         46           MCC         74         F           MIN         74         F           MNC         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MO         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MSM         74         Firmware Upgrade         29           MT         74         Flash Programming Protocol         31	IOTA74	
IS-95       74       Electrostatic Discharge Control.       17         IS-95A       74       EMC Requirements for Industry Canada       46         IS-95B       74       EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance       46         MCC       74       F         MIN       74       F         MNC       74       Fax Commands Reference Guides       11         MO       74       FCC Part 15 Regulation       46         MS       74       FCC Part 68 Regulation       47         MSM       74       Firmware Upgrade       29         MT       74       Flash Programming Protocol       31	IS-200074	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
IS-95A       74       EMC Requirements for Industry Canada       46         IS-95B       74       EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance       46         MCC       74       F         MDN       74       F         MIN       74       F         MNC       74       Fax Commands Reference Guides       11         MO       74       FCC Part 15 Regulation       46         MS       74       FCC Part 68 Regulation       47         MSM       74       Firmware Upgrade       29         MT       74       Flash Programming Protocol       31	IS-70774	
IS-95B       74       EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance       46         MCC       74       F         MDN       74       F         MIN       74       F         MNC       74       Fax Commands Reference Guides       11         MO       74       FCC Part 15 Regulation       46         MS       74       FCC Part 68 Regulation       47         MSM       74       Firmware Upgrade       29         MT       74       Flash Programming Protocol       31	IS-9574	Electrostatic Discharge Control
MCC         74           MDN         74         F           MIN         74           MNC         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MO         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MSM         74         Firmware Upgrade         29           MT         74         Flash Programming Protocol         31	IS-95A74	
MDN         74         F           MIN         74           MNC         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MO         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MSM         74         Firmware Upgrade         29           MT         74         Flash Programming Protocol         31	IS-95B74	EMC, Safety, and R&TTE Directive Compliance 46
MIN         74           MNC         74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         11           MO         74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         46           MS         74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         47           MSM         74         Firmware Upgrade         29           MT         74         Flash Programming Protocol         31	MCC74	
MIN         .74           MNC         .74         Fax Commands Reference Guides         .11           MO         .74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         .46           MS         .74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         .47           MSM         .74         Firmware Upgrade         .29           MT         .74         Flash Programming Protocol         .31	MDN74	Tr Comments
MO.         .74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         .46           MS.         .74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         .47           MSM.         .74         Firmware Upgrade         .29           MT         .74         Flash Programming Protocol         .31		<i>E</i>
MO.         .74         FCC Part 15 Regulation         .46           MS.         .74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         .47           MSM         .74         Firmware Upgrade         .29           MT         .74         Flash Programming Protocol         .31	MNC74	Fax Commands Reference Guides 11
MS         .74         FCC Part 68 Regulation         .47           MSM         .74         Firmware Upgrade         .29           MT         .74         Flash Programming Protocol         .31		
MSM	MS74	
MT		
1 dash Flogramming Flotocol		
	Multi Teels Custome Inc. Heisser Control Inc.	

		Index
Flash Upgrade	SocketModem (MT5692SMI)	124
Flash Upgrade Example30	SocketModem (MT9234SMI)	107
	Parallel Interface Register Table	
$\boldsymbol{G}$	SocketModem (MT5692SMI)	
•	SocketModem (MT9234SMI)	109
Global Positioning System (GPS) Features66	Parallel Pin Configurations	101
Global Positioning System (GPS) Technical Specifications	MT5692SMI	
66	SocketModem (MT9234SMI)	104
	Parallel Timing Requirements SocketModem (MT5692SMI)	123
H	SocketModem (MT9234SMI)	
11	Parts	
Handling Precautions related to electrostatic discharge	Parts for Analog SocketModems	
control17	PC Board Layout Guidelines	
HSDPA on Linux93	Pin Configurations	
HSDPA Operating Modes95	SocketEthernet IP (MT100SEM-IP)	149
	SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)	143
I	SocketModem (MT2492SMI)	139
<b>-</b>	SocketModem (MT9234SMI)	
Internal Registers	SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI)	166
International Modem Restrictions	Pin Out	
Interrupt Sources and Reset Control Table	SocketModem Parallel Build (MT5692SMI)	120
MT5692SMI128	Pin Outs	110
SocketModem (MT9234SMI)110	SocketModem (MT5692SMI)	119
	Power Measurements SocketEthernet IP (MT100SEM-IP)	150
J	SocketModem (MT2492SMI)	
	SocketModem (MT5692SMI)	
Japan Regulations50	SocketModem (MT9234SMI)	
Jumper – 5V / 3.3V22	SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C)	
1	SocketModem Cell & iCell (MTSMC-G2 Family	
7	SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E1)	
$oldsymbol{L}$	SocketModem HSDPA (MTSMC-H)	90
Label Example for Analog SocketModems42	SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI)	165
Labeling Requirements	Power Saving Feature for HSDPA	96
Labeling Your Product	Product Ordering Information	
	MT2456SMI-22	
1/	SocketEthernet IP (MT100SEM-IP)	
M	SocketModem (MT2492SMI)	
Maintenance of Your Modem44	SocketModem (MT5692SMI)SocketModem (MT9234SMI)	
Mechanical Drawing in Millimeters for Analog Modems 19	SocketModern CDMA (MTSMC-C)	
Mechanical Drawings	SocketModem Cell & iCell (MTSMC-G2 Family	
SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C)69	SocketModern EDGE (MTSMC-E1)	
SocketModem Cell – Voice Build (MTSMC-G2 V)61	SocketModem HSDPA (MTSMC-H)	
SocketModem Cell (MTSMC-G2)60	SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI)	
SocketModem Cell -l GPS Build (MTSMC-G2-GP)63	SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP)	155
SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E1)78	Programmable Baud Rates Table	
SocketModem EDGE with Voice (MTSMC-E1-V)79	SocketModem (MT5692SMI)	133
SocketModem HSDPA (MTSMC-H)87	SocketModem (MT9234SMI)	113
SocketModem HSDPA-USB (MTSMC-H-U)88	Provisioning for CDMA	73
SocketModem iCell – IP Build (MTSMC-G2-IP)62		
SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-L-IP)159	R	
Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP)158		
Microphone and Speaker for SocketModem MT5692SMI136	Receiver Features for EDGE	83
Microphone Input for EDGE	Receiver Features for HSDPA	91
Microphone Inputs for MTSMC-G264	Reset	13
The state of the s	RF Interface	
27	MTSMC-G2	
N	SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C)	
Nam Zasland Talasan Wamina Nation 40	SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E1)	
New Zealand Telecom Warning Notice48	RoHS Compliance	52
_		
P	${\mathcal S}$	
D		
Parallel Interface	Safety Warning Telecom	44

		Index
SocketModem CDMA Interfaces72	SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)	145
South African Statement, Regulations48	SocketModem (MT5692SMI)	134
Speaker Output for EDGE83	SocketModem (MT9234SMI)	114
Stereo jack feed jumper22	Transmitter Features for EDGE	83
Switch Block	Transmitter Features for HSDPA	91
T	U	
Technical Specifications	Universal Developer Kit contents	11
SocketEthernet IP (MT100SEM-IP)148	Universal Pin Descriptions	12
SocketModem (MT2456SMI-22)	Universal Socket Design	10
SocketModem (MT2492SMI)	USB Interface for HSDPA	
SocketModem (MT5692SMI)117		
SocketModem (MT9234SMI)101	T-7	
SocketModem CDMA (MTSMC-C)68	W	
SocketModem Cell & iCell (MTSMC-G2 Family)57	WEEE Directive	51
SocketModem EDGE (MTSMC-E1)77		
SocketModem HSDPA (MTSMC-H)85	Wireless Approvals	
SocketWireless Bluetooth (MTS2BTSMI)165		
SocketWireless Wi-Fi (MT810SWM-IP)156	$oldsymbol{X}$	
Telecom Approvals45		
Temperature Control for HSDPA96	XMODEM Serial Port Upgrade	30
Tip and Ring Interface		